

# Instruction and Reference Guide

Model BLBA



FOR THE LOVE OF SEWING

To register your machine warranty and receive Baby Lock product updates and offers, go to <u>babylock.com/login</u>. If you have questions with registration, visit your Authorized Baby Lock Retailer.

Baby Lock Consumer Helpline: 800-313-4110

www.BabyLock.com

Brought to You by Tacony Corporation<sup>®</sup>.

# TRADEMARKS

### **IMPORTANT:**

READ BEFORE DOWNLOADING, COPYING, INSTALLING OR USING.

By downloading, copying, installing or using the software you agree to this license. If you do not agree to this license, do not download, install, copy or use the software.

### Intel License Agreement For Open Source Computer Vision Library

Copyright © 2000, Intel Corporation, all rights reserved. Third party copyrights are property of their respective owners.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistribution's of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistribution's in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- The name of Intel Corporation may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

This software is provided by the copyright holders and contributors "as is" and any express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are disclaimed. In no event shall Intel or contributors be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages (including, but not limited to, procurement of substitute goods or services; loss of use, data, or profits; or business interruption) however caused and on any theory of liability, whether in contract, strict liability, or tort (including negligence or otherwise) arising in any way out of the use of this software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

All information provided related to future Intel products and plans is preliminary and subject to change at any time, without notice.

SD is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.

Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.

SmartMedia is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

MultiMediaCard (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.

xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.

IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as  $^{\circ}$  and  $^{m}$  are not clearly described within the text.

# **INTRODUCTION**

Thank you for purchasing this machine. Before using this machine, carefully read the "IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS", and then study this manual for the correct operation of the various functions. In addition, after you have finished reading this manual, store it where it can quickly be accessed for future reference.

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

Please read these safety instructions before attempting to use the machine.



f 1 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using, when cleaning, making any user servicing adjustments mentioned in this manual, or if you are leaving the machine unattended.



persons.

2 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when making any adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual.

- To unplug the machine, switch the machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off, then grasp the plug and pull it out of the electrical outlet. Do not pull on the cord.
- Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet. Do not use an extension cord.
- Always unplug your machine if the power is cut.

 ${f 3}$  Electrical Hazards:

- This machine should be connected to an AC power source within the range indicated on the rating label. Do not connect it to a DC power source or inverter. If you are not sure what kind of power source you have, contact a qualified electrician.
- This machine is approved for use in the country of purchase only.

4 Never operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, has been dropped or damaged, or water is spilled on the unit. Return the machine to the nearest authorized retailer for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.

- While the machine is stored or in use if you notice anything unusual, such as an odor, heat, discoloration or deformation, stop using the machine immediately and unplug the power cord.
- When transporting the sewing machine, be sure to carry it by its handle. Lifting the sewing machine by any other part may damage the machine or result in the machine falling, which could cause injuries.
- When lifting the sewing machine, be careful not to make any sudden or careless movements, otherwise you may injure your back or knees.

## **5** Always keep your work area clear:

- Never operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the sewing machine and foot control free from the build up of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
- Do not store objects on the foot controller.
- Do not use extension cords. Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet.
- Never drop or insert foreign objects into any opening.
- Do not operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
- Do not use the machine near a heat source, such as a stove or iron; otherwise, the machine, power cord or garment being sewn may ignite, resulting in fire or an electric shock.
- Do not place this sewing machine on an unstable surface, such as an unsteady or slanted table, otherwise the sewing machine may fall, resulting in injuries.

### **6** Special care is required when sewing:

- Always pay close attention to the needle. Do not use bent or damaged needles.
- Keep fingers away from all moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- Switch the sewing machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off when making any adjustments in the needle area.
- Do not use a damaged or incorrect needle plate, as it could cause the needle to break.
- Do not push or pull the fabric when sewing, and follow careful instruction when free motion stitching so that you do not deflect the needle and cause it to break.

### **7** This machine is not a toy:

- Your close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- The plastic bag that this sewing machine was supplied in should be kept out of the reach of children or disposed of. Never allow children to play with the bag due to the danger of suffocation.
- Do not use outdoors.

### **8** For a longer service life:

- When using and storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- Do not use cleansers or organic solvents, such as thinner, petroleum ether or alcohol, to clean the machine. Otherwise, the finish may peel off or become scratched.
- Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.

### **9** For repair or adjustment:

- If the light unit is damaged, it must be replaced by an authorized retailer.
- In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Baby Lock retailer.

#### Use this machine only for its intended use as described in the manual.

#### Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.

Use the interface cable (USB cable) included with this machine.

The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

For additional product information and updates, visit our website at www.babylock.com

# SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS This machine is intended for household use.

### FOR USERS IN COUNTRIES EXCEPT EUROPEAN COUNTRIES

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

### FOR USERS IN EUROPEAN COUNTRIES

This appliance can be used by children aged from 8 years and above and persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge if they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance in a safe way and understand the hazards involved. Children shall not play with the appliance. Cleaning and user maintenance shall not be made by children without supervision.

# FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

# **IMPORTANT**

- In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying the 🔅 mark, rating as marked on plug.
- Always replace the fuse cover. Never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.
- If the available electrical outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, you should contact your authorized retailer to obtain the correct lead.

# Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Supplier's Declaration of Conformity (For USA Only)

Responsible Party: Tacony Corporation 1760 Gilsinn Lane, Fenton, Missouri 63026 USA

declares that the product

| Product Name: | Baby Lock Sewing Machine |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| Model Number: | BLBA                     |

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the retailer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The included interface cable should be used in order to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Tacony Corporation could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE

# **B** Basic operations

After purchasing your machine, be sure to read this section first. This section provides details on the initial setup procedures as well as descriptions of this machine's more useful functions.

# Chapter 1 Getting Ready

To learn the operation of the principal parts and the screens *Page B-14* 

# **S** Sewing

This section describes procedures for using the various utility stitches as well as other functions. It provides details on basic machine sewing in addition to the more expressive features of the machine, from sewing tubular pieces and buttonholes to sewing the character and decorative stitch patterns and decorative bobbin work.

## **Chapter 1** Sewing Basics

To learn how to prepare for sewing and basic sewing operations *Page S-2* 

# **Chapter 3** Character/Decorative Stitches

The variety of stitches widen your creativity *Page S-76* 

# Chapter 2 Utility Stitches

Pre-programmed with more than 100 frequently used stitches *Page S-20* 

### **Chapter 4** How to Create Bobbin Work (Sewing)

Wind medium to heavy weight thread on a bobbin for three-dimensional appearance. *Page S-104* 

# A Appendix

This section provides important information for operating this machine.

### Chapter 1 Maintenance and Troubleshooting

Find troubleshooting tips and pointers as well as how to keep your machine in the best working condition. *Page A-2* 

# CONTENTS

| TRA | DEN | <b>IARKS</b> |
|-----|-----|--------------|
|-----|-----|--------------|

| INTRODUCTION                      | 1 |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS     | 1 |
| WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE | 5 |
| NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR  |   |
| FUNCTIONS                         | 8 |
| Machine                           | 8 |
| Needle and Presser Foot Section   | 9 |
| Operation Buttons 1               | 0 |
| Using the Flat Bed Attachment 1   | 0 |
| Included Accessories 1            | 1 |
| Options 1                         | 2 |

# **B** Basic operations

### **Chapter 1 Getting Ready**

| TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF                           | . 15 |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Setting Your Machine for the First Time              | 16   |
| LCD SCREEN                                           |      |
| Using the Machine Setting Mode Key                   |      |
| Using the Sewing Machine Help Key                    | 26   |
| Using the Operation Guide Function                   | 27   |
| Using the Sewing Guide Function                      |      |
| Using the Pattern Explanation Function               | 29   |
| LOWER THREADING                                      | . 30 |
| Winding the Bobbin                                   | 30   |
| Setting the Bobbin                                   |      |
| Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread                         | 37   |
| UPPER THREADING                                      | . 38 |
| Upper Threading                                      | 38   |
| Using the Twin Needle Mode                           | 42   |
| Using Threads that Unwind Quickly                    | 44   |
| CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT                            | . 45 |
| Removing the Presser Foot                            | 45   |
| Attaching the Presser Foot                           | 45   |
| Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter | 45   |
| CHANGING THE NEEDLE                                  | . 47 |
| ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC                          | . 49 |
| About the Needle                                     | 49   |
| Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations                    | 49   |
| USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE                    |      |
| ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE                             | . 50 |
| Using USB Media                                      |      |
| Connecting the Machine to the Computer               |      |
| Using a USB Mouse                                    |      |
| Using the Dual Feed Foot                             |      |
| 0                                                    |      |

#### Sewing S

### **Chapter 1 Sewing Basics**

| STITCH SETTINGS                                        | 10 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Setting the Stitch Width                               |    |
| Setting the Stitch Length                              |    |
| Setting the "L/R SHIFT"                                |    |
| Setting the Thread Tension                             |    |
| USEFUL FUNCTIONS                                       | 14 |
| Automatic Thread Cutting                               | 14 |
| Using the Knee Lifter                                  |    |
| Pivoting                                               | 15 |
| Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot |    |
| Pressure)                                              | 17 |
| Needle Position – Stitch Placement                     | 18 |
| Locking the Screen                                     | 18 |
|                                                        |    |

### **Chapter 2 Utility Stitches**

14

2

| napter 2 Utility Stitches           | 20 |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES          | 21 |
| Selecting a Stitch                  | 21 |
| Saving Your Stitch Settings         | 22 |
| SEWING THE STITCHES                 |    |
| Straight Stitches                   |    |
| Dart Seam                           |    |
| Gathering                           | 29 |
| Flat Fell Seam                      |    |
| Pintuck                             | 30 |
| Zigzag Stitches                     | 31 |
| Elastic Zigzag Stitches             |    |
| Overcasting                         |    |
| Quilting                            |    |
| Blind Hem Stitches                  |    |
| Appliqué                            | 48 |
| Shelltuck Stitches                  |    |
| Scallop Stitches                    | 50 |
| Crazy Quilting                      | 50 |
| Smocking Stitches                   | 51 |
| Fagoting                            | 52 |
| Tape or Elastic Attaching           |    |
| Heirloom                            | 53 |
| One-step Buttonholes                | 55 |
| Darning                             | 58 |
| Bar Tacks                           | 59 |
| Button Sewing                       | 61 |
| Eyelet                              | 62 |
| Multi-directional Sewing            |    |
| (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch) | 63 |
| Zipper Insertion                    |    |
| STITCH SETTING CHART                | 68 |

### Chapter 3 Character/Decorative Stitches 76

| SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS                                                                                  | 77 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch |    |
| Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns                                                   | 78 |
| Characters                                                                                                 |    |
| SEWING STITCH PATTERNS                                                                                     | 81 |
| Sewing Attractive Finishes                                                                                 |    |
| Basic Sewing                                                                                               |    |
| Making Adjustments                                                                                         |    |
| EDITING STITCH PATTERNS                                                                                    | 84 |
| Changing the Size                                                                                          | 86 |
| Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)                                                   | 87 |
| Creating a Vertical Mirror Image                                                                           | 87 |
| Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image                                                                         |    |
| Sewing a Pattern Continuously                                                                              | 87 |
| Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)                                                   |    |
| Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern                                                                  |    |
| Checking the Image                                                                                         | 89 |

| COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|
| Before Combining                                     |
| Combining Various Stitch Patterns 90                 |
| Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns            |
| Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns    |
| Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length        |
| Making Step Stitch Patterns                          |
| (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)                 |
| USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION                            |
| Stitch Data Precautions                              |
| Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory       |
| Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media                  |
| Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer               |
| Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory |
| Recalling from USB Media 100                         |
| Recalling from the Computer 101                      |

#### Chapter 4 How to Create Bobbin Work (Sewing) 104

| (50 116)                          | 104 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| ABOUT BOBBIN WORK                 | 105 |
| PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK         | 105 |
| Required Materials                | 105 |
| Upper Threading                   |     |
| Preparing the Bobbin Thread       | 107 |
| CREATING BOBBIN WORK              | 111 |
| Positioning the Fabric and Sewing | 111 |
| Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing    | 113 |
| ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION      | 114 |
| TROUBLESHOOTING                   | 115 |

2

# **A** Appendix

### Chapter 1 Maintenance and Troubleshooting

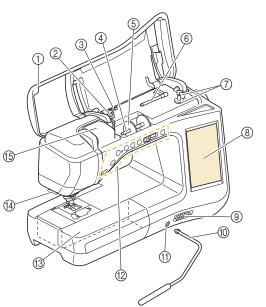
| CARE AND MAINTENANCE 3                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Restrictions on oiling 3                                 |
| Precautions on storing the machine 3                     |
| Cleaning the LCD Screen 3                                |
| Cleaning the Machine Casing 3                            |
| Cleaning the Race 3                                      |
| Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area 5            |
| About the Maintenance Message 5                          |
| ADJUSTING THE SCREEN                                     |
| Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display 6         |
| Touch Panel is Malfunctioning                            |
| TROUBLESHOOTING                                          |
| Frequent troubleshooting topics 7                        |
| Upper thread is too tight                                |
| Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric                   |
| Incorrect thread tension 10                              |
| Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed 11 |
| List of Symptoms 14                                      |
| ERROR MESSAGES 17                                        |
| SPECIFICATIONS                                           |
| UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S                                 |
| SOFTWARE                                                 |
| Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media                        |
| Upgrade Procedure Using Computer                         |
| INDEX                                                    |

# NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

### Machine

### Front View



#### ① Top cover

Open the top cover to thread the machine and wind the bobbin. Pre-tension disk

- Pre-tension disk Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk when winding the bobbin thread. (page B-30)
- ③ **Thread guide for bobbin winding** Pass the thread through this thread guide when winding the bobbin thread. (page B-30)
- ④ Spool pin
- Place a spool of thread on the spool pin. (page B-38) (5) **Spool cap** 
  - Use the spool cap to hold the spool of thread in place.
- (page B-38) (6) Supplemental spool pin

Use this spool pin to wind the bobbin thread, or to sew with the twin needle. (page B-30, B-42)

⑦ Bobbin winder

Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin. (page B-30) (8) LCD (liquid crystal display)

Settings for the selected stitch and error messages appear in the LCD. (page B-18)

- 9 Speaker
- 10 Knee lifter

Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot. (page S-15)

#### (1) Knee lifter slot

Insert the knee lifter into the slot. (page S-15)

② Operation buttons (7 buttons) and sewing speed controller

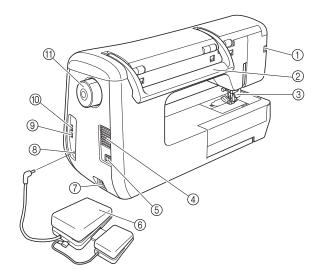
Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine. (page B-10)

- (3) Flat bed attachment with accessory compartment Store presser feet and bobbins in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. When sewing cylindrical pieces, remove the flat bed attachment. (page B-10)
- ① Thread cutter Pass the threads through the threads the threads the threads through the threads the the threads the threads the threads the the threads the threads th

Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them. (page B-40) **Thread guide plate**

Pass the thread around the thread guide plate when threading upper thread. (page B-38)

### ■ Right-side/Rear View



1 **Connector for the dual feed foot** Connect the dual feed foot. (page B-51)

(The dual feed foot is optional in some countries or regions.) (2) **Handle** 

Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.

③ Presser foot lever

Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot. (page B-45)

#### (4) Air vent

The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used.

(5) Main power switch

Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF. (page B-15)

6 Multi-function foot controller

Various sewing machine operations can be programmed into the multi-function foot controller. (page B-21)

⑦ Power cord receptacle

Insert the power cord into the machine receptacle. (page B-15) (8) Foot controller jack

Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine. (page S-4)

#### **③ USB** port for computer

In order to import/export patterns between a computer and the machine, plug the USB cable into the USB port. (page B-50, S-98)

#### 1 USB port for mouse/media

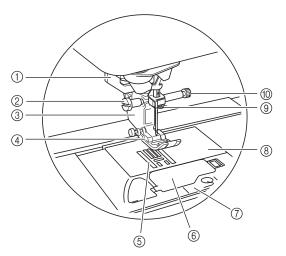
In order to send patterns from/to USB media, plug the USB media directly into the USB port. (page B-50, S-97) Connect a USB mouse to operate with mouse. (page B-50)

#### (1) Handwheel

Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise and lower the needle. The wheel should be turned toward the front of the machine.

B-8

# Needle and Presser Foot Section



#### ① Buttonhole lever

The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes. (page S-55)

- ② Presser foot holder screw Use the presser foot holder screw to hold the presser foot in place. (page B-45)
- ③ Presser foot holder

The presser foot is attached to the presser foot holder. (page B-45)

④ Presser foot

The presser foot consistently applies pressure to the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch. (page B-45)

5 Feed dogs

The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction. **Bobbin cover** 

- (6) Bobbin cover
   Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin. (page B-35, S-32)
   (7) Needle plate cover
- Remove the needle plate cover to clean the race. (page S-26) **Needle plate**

The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight seams. (page S-26)

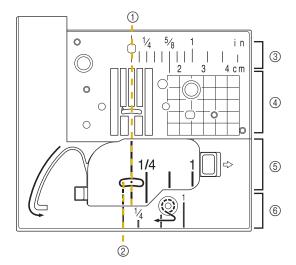
#### (9) Needle bar thread guide Pass the upper thread through the needle bar thread guide. (page B-38)

#### (page B co) (i) Needle clamp screw

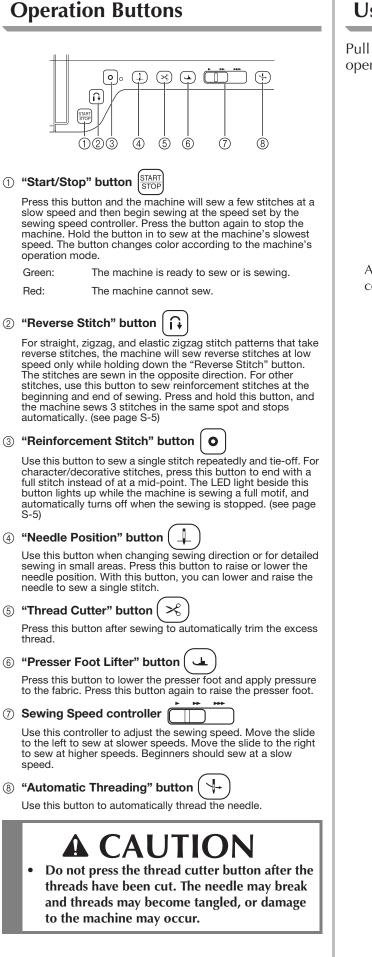
Use the needle clamp screw to hold the needle in place. (page B-47)

# Measurements on the needle plate, bobbin cover (with mark) and needle plate cover

The measurements on the needle plate and bobbin cover are references for patterns with a middle (center) needle position. The measurements on the needle plate cover are references for stitches with a left needle position.

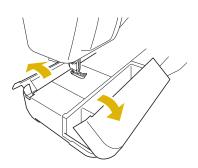


- ① For stitches with a middle (center) needle position
- ② For stitches with a left needle position
- ③ Middle (center) needle position <inch>
- ④ Middle (center) needle position <cm>
- **(5)** Middle (center) needle position <inch>
- ⑥ Left needle position <inch>

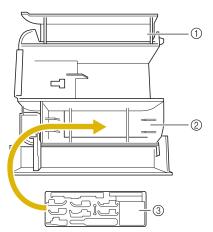


## Using the Flat Bed Attachment

Pull up on the lid of the flat bed attachment to open the front or back accessory compartments.

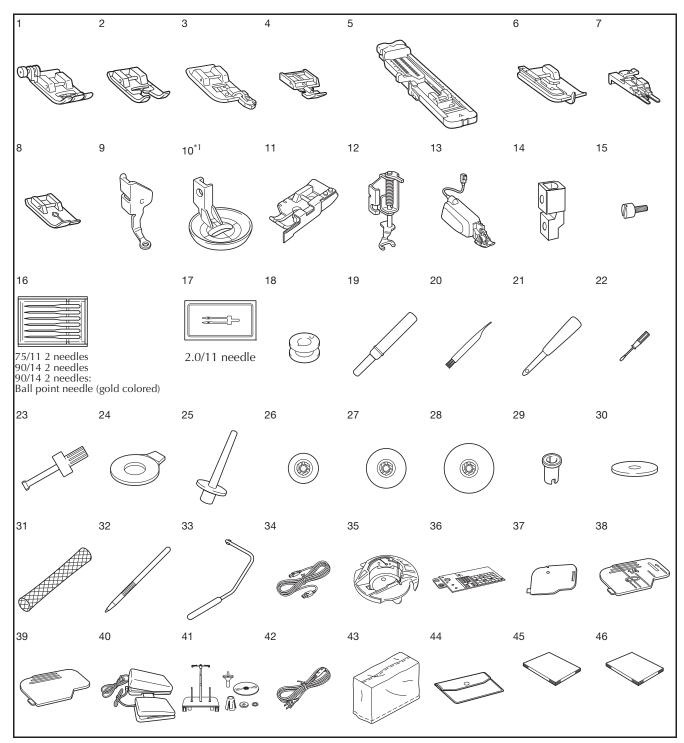


A presser foot storage tray is stored in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment.



- ① Storage space of the flat bed attachment
- ② Presser foot storage space of the flat bed attachment
- ③ Presser foot storage tray There are also storage spaces for optional presser feet.

# **Included Accessories**



| No. | Part Name                                           | Part Code  | No. | Part Name                           | Part Code  |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|-----|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 1   | Zigzag foot "J" (on machine)                        | XF3022-001 | 11  | 1/4" quilting foot with guide       | XC6800-251 |
| 2   | Monogramming foot "N"                               | X53840-351 | 12  | Free motion open toe quilting       | XF4873-001 |
| 3   | Overcasting foot "G"                                | XC3098-051 |     | foot "O"                            |            |
| 4   | Zipper foot "I"                                     | X59370-051 | 13  |                                     | BLSA-DDF   |
| 5   | Buttonhole foot "A"                                 | X57789-251 |     | Adapter                             | XF3613-001 |
| 6   | Blind stitch foot "R"                               | X56409-051 | 15  |                                     | XA4813-051 |
| 7   | Button fitting foot "M"                             | 130489-001 | 16  | Needle set <sup>*2</sup>            | X58358-051 |
| 8   | Straight stitch foot                                | XD0826-051 | 17  | Twin needle <sup>*3</sup>           | X59296-151 |
| 9   | Free motion quilting foot "C"                       | XF4737-001 | 18  | Bobbin × 10                         | X52800-150 |
| 10  | Free motion echo quilting foot<br>"F" <sup>*1</sup> | XE0766-001 | 19  | (One is on machine.)<br>Seam ripper | XF4967-001 |

| No. | Part Name                                      | Part Code  |
|-----|------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 20  | Cleaning brush                                 | X59476-051 |
| 21  | Eyelet punch                                   | XZ5051-001 |
| 22  | Screwdriver (small)                            | X55468-051 |
| 23  | Screwdriver (large)                            | XC4237-021 |
| 24  | Disc-shaped screwdriver                        | XC1074-051 |
| 25  | Vertical spool pin                             | XC8619-052 |
| 26  | Spool cap (small)                              | 130013-154 |
| 27  | Spool cap (medium) × 2<br>(One is on machine.) | X55260-153 |
| 28  | Spool cap (large)                              | 130012-054 |
| 29  | Thread spool insert (mini king thread spool)   | XA5752-121 |
| 30  | Spool felt (on machine)                        | X57045-051 |
| 31  | Spool net × 2                                  | XA5523-050 |
| 32  | Touch pen (stylus)                             | XA9940-051 |
| 33  | Knee lifter                                    | XA6941-052 |
| 34  | USB cable                                      | XD0745-051 |
| 35  | Bobbin case (gray, for bobbin<br>work)         | XE8298-001 |
| 36  | Straight stitch needle plate                   | XF3076-001 |
| 37  | Cord guide bobbin cover<br>(with single hole)  | XE8991-101 |

| No. | Part Name                             | Part Code  |
|-----|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 38  | Bobbin cover (with mark) (on machine) | XF0750-101 |
| 39  | Bobbin cover                          | XE8992-101 |
| 40  | Multi-function foot controller        | BLMA-MFC   |
| 41  | 2-spool thread stand                  | BLMA-STS   |
| 42  | Power cord                            | XC6052-051 |
| 43  | Dust cover                            | XF4694-001 |
| 44  | Accessory bag                         | XC4487-021 |
| 45  | Instruction and Reference<br>Guide    | XF6507-001 |
| 46  | Quick Reference Guide                 | XF6510-001 |

<sup>\*1</sup> Attach the included adapter to use this product.

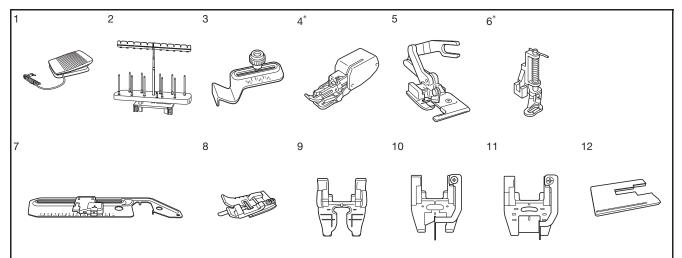
- \*2 75/11 2 needles
  - 90/14 2 needles 90/14 2 needles: Ball point needle (gold colored)
- \*3 2.0/11 needle

#### 🦙 Memo

• Foot controller: Model U This foot controller can be used on the machine model: BLBA.

# Options

The following are available as optional accessories to be purchased separately from your authorized Baby Lock retailer.



| No. | Part Name                                      | Part Code  |  |
|-----|------------------------------------------------|------------|--|
| 1   | Foot controller                                | XC8816-051 |  |
| 2   | 10 spool stand                                 | BLMA-TS    |  |
| 3   | Seam guide                                     | BLG-SG     |  |
| 4   | Walking foot*                                  | FA12       |  |
| 5   | Side cutter foot                               | BLG-SCF    |  |
| 6   | Free-motion quilting foot <sup>*</sup>         | ESG-TP     |  |
| 7   | Circular attachment                            | BL-CSA     |  |
| 8   | Edge joining foot                              | ESG-EJF    |  |
| 9   | Open toe for the dual feed foot                | BLTY-OTDF  |  |
| 10  | Stitch in the ditch sole for<br>dual feed foot | BLDY-SDDF  |  |
| 11  | 1/4" sole with guide for dual feed foot        | BLDY-QFDF  |  |
| 12  | Extension table                                | BLMA-ET    |  |

\* Attach the included adapter to use this product.

#### 🔊 Memo

• All specifications are correct at the time of printing. Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.



This section provides details on the initial setup procedures as well as descriptions of this machine's more useful functions.

Page number starts with "B" in this section.

| Chapter1 | <b>Getting Ready</b> | B-14 |
|----------|----------------------|------|
|----------|----------------------|------|

# **B**Basic operations

# Chapter **1** Getting Ready

### 

| LCD SCREEN                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Utility Stitch Screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul> <li>Key Functions</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <ul> <li>Selecting the "Eco Mode" or "Shutoff Support Mode"</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul> <li>Selecting the "Eco Mode" or "Shutoff Support Mode"</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul> <li>Selecting the Initial Screen Display</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Choosing the Display Language                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Using the Sewing Machine Help Key26                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Using the Operation Guide Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Using the Sewing Guide Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Using the Pattern Explanation Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| LOWER THREADING                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Winding the Bobbin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Using the Supplemental Spool Pin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Using the Spool Pin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <ul> <li>Untangling Thread from Beneath the Bobbin Winder Seat 34</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Setting the Bobbin35                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| UPPER THREADING                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Upper Threading38                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Using the Twin Needle Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Using Threads that Unwind Quickly                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| ■ Using the Spool Net                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Using the Vertical Spool Pin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <ul> <li>Osing the vertical spool in manufacture in the second secon</li></ul> |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Removing the Presser Foot45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Removing the Presser Foot45<br>Attaching the Presser Foot45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Removing the Presser Foot45         Attaching the Presser Foot45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Removing the Presser Foot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Removing the Presser Foot45         Attaching the Presser Foot45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter45                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Removing the Presser Foot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE         Using USB Media       50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE         Using USB Media       50         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Image: Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Image: Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50       50         Using a USB Mouse       50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       50         Using USB Media       50         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         Clicking a Key       51                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         ■ Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50       50         Using a USB Media       50       50         Using a USB Mouse       50       50         ■ Chicking a Key       51       51         ■ Changing Pages       51       51                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         JSING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       40         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       50         Using USB Media       50         Using USB Media       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         Using the Dual Feed Foot       51                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         VSING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         E Clicking a Key       51         Changing Pages       51         Using the Dual Feed Foot       51                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE         ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         Clicking a Key       51         Changing Pages       51         Using the Dual Feed Foot       51         Attaching/betaching Toe       53                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50       50         Using USB Media       50       50         Using a USB Mouse       50       50         Clicking a Key       51       51         Changing Pages       51       51         Using the Dual Feed Foot       51         Attaching the Dual Feed Foot       51         Attaching the Zeed Foot       51         Attaching Detaching Toe       53         Using the Dual Feed Foot       53                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Removing the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       45         Attaching the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"       46         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       47         ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC       49         About the Needle       49         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       49         USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE       ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE         ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE       50         Using USB Media       50         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       50         Using a USB Mouse       50         Clicking a Key       51         Changing Pages       51         Using the Dual Feed Foot       51         Attaching/betaching Toe       53                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

# **TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF**

# A WARNING

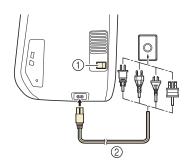
- Use only regular household electricity for the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the plugs on the power cord are firmly inserted into the electrical outlet and the power cord receptacle on the machine. Otherwise, a fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not insert the plug on the power cord into an electrical outlet that is in poor condition.
- Turn the main power to OFF and remove the plug in the following circumstances:
- When you are away from the machine After using the machine When the power fails during use When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection During electrical storms

# **A** CAUTION

- Use the power cord included with this machine.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged in to them. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.
- When unplugging the machine, always turn the main power to OFF first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord, or cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized retailer for repairs before continuing use.
- Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise, a fire may result.
- When leaving the machine unattended, either the main switch of the machine should be turned to OFF or the plug must be removed from the socket-outlet.
- When servicing the machine or when removing covers, the machine must be unplugged.
- For U.S.A. only This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way. If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.

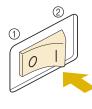
B

Insert the power supply cord into the power cord receptacle, then insert the plug into a wall outlet.



- 1 Main power switch
- ② Power supply cord

Turn the main power switch to "I" to turn on the machine.



OFF
 ON

#### 🗸 Note

• When the straight stitch needle plate is on the machine, the needle will automatically move to the middle position.

#### 🔊 Memo

• When the machine is turned on, the needle and the feed dogs will make sound when they move; this is not a malfunction.

When the machine is turned on, the opening movie is played. Touch anywhere on the screen to display the sewing screen.

# **A** CAUTION

• Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.

# Turn the main power switch to "O" to turn off the machine.

#### 🏹 Memo

 If the machine is turned off in the middle of sewing in the "Sewing" function, the operation will not continued after turning the power on again.

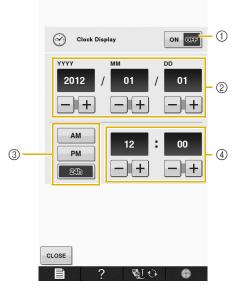
### Setting Your Machine for the First Time

When you first turn on the machine, set the language and time/date to your language and local time/date. Follow the procedure below when the settings screen appears automatically.

| Press   | ▲ and ▶ to set your local language. |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
|         | Select your language.               |
|         | English English                     |
|         | ОК                                  |
| 2 Press | ок                                  |
|         |                                     |

- 3 The message screen, confirming if you want to set time/date, appears. To set the time/date, press ok ; to cancel the setting, press cancel.
  - $\rightarrow\,$  The screen to set time/date appears.

## A Press — or + to set time/date.



- ① Press to display the time on the screen.
- ② Set the year (YYYY), month (MM) and date (DD).
- ③ Select whether 24h or 12h setting to display.
- ④ Set the current time.

#### Press **CLOSE** to start using your machine.

 $\rightarrow$  The clock starts from 0 second of the time you set.

#### 🗸 Note

5

• The time/date you set may be cleared, if you don't turn on the machine for a certain period.

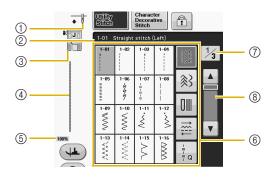
# LCD SCREEN

# **A** CAUTION

• Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.

### ■ Utility Stitch Screen

Press a key with your finger to select the stitch pattern, to select a machine function, or to select an operation indicated on the key. When the key display is light gray, the function is not currently available.

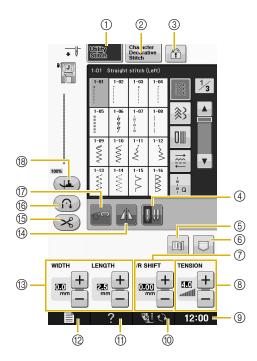


| No. | Display                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Key Name                           | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1   | <b>▲</b> U                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Needle position<br>setting display | Shows single or twin needle mode setting, and the needle stop<br>position.<br>Single needle/down<br>position<br>Twin needle/down<br>position<br>Twin needle/down<br>position<br>Twin needle/up position                                                                                                                           | -    |
| 2   | 1-01 Straight stitch (Left)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Selected stitch<br>display         | Shows the name and code number of the selected stitch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | S-3  |
| 3   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Presser foot display               | Shows the presser foot code. Attach the presser foot indicated in this display before sewing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | B-45 |
| 4   | 100%                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Stitch preview                     | Shows a preview of the selected stitch. When shown at 100%, the stitch appears in the screen at nearly its actual size.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | S-21 |
| 6   | 100%                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Pattern display size               | Shows the approximate size of the pattern selected.       S-2         100% : Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern       50% : 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern         25% : 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern       * The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of fabric and thread that is used. |      |
| 6   | 1-81         Strategies esticate (art)           1-84         1-82         1-84         Image: Strate (art)           1-84         1-84         1-84         Image: Strate (art) <tr< td=""><td>Stitch selection<br/>screen</td><td>Press the key for the pattern you want to sew. Use</td><td>S-21</td></tr<> | Stitch selection<br>screen         | Press the key for the pattern you want to sew. Use                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | S-21 |
| 7   | 1/3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Page display                       | Shows additional pages that can be displayed. (Illustration shows page – 1 of 3.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |

| No. | Display | Key Name   | Explanation                                                                                                                  | Page |
|-----|---------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 8   |         | Scroll key | Press or <b>V</b> , to move one page at a time, or touch anywhere on the bar to jump ahead for additional pages of stitches. | -    |

All key functions of the LCD are explained in the "Key Functions" table on the following page.

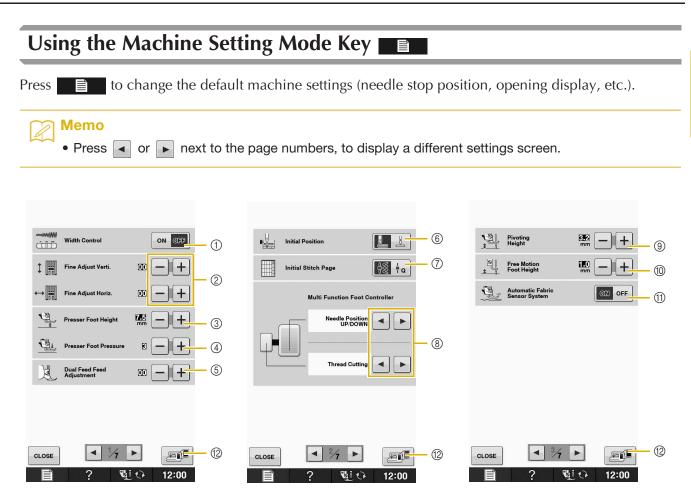
## **Key Functions**



| No. | Display                           | Key Name                                        | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Page                   |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1   | Utility<br>Stitch                 | "Utility Stitch" key                            | Press this key to select a straight stitch, zigzag stitch, buttonhole, blind hem stitch, or other stitches commonly used in garment construction.                                                                                                                     |                        |
| 2   | Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | "Character/<br>Decorative Stitch" key           | Press this key to select character or decorative stitch patterns.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                        |
| 3   |                                   | Screen lock key                                 | Press this key to lock the screen. When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings.                                                        | S-18                   |
| 4   | 0.00                              | Needle mode<br>selection key<br>(Single/Double) | Press this key to select twin needle sewing mode. The sewing mode changes<br>between single needle mode and twin needle mode each time you press the<br>key. If the key display is light gray, the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn<br>in the twin needle mode. | B-42                   |
| 5   |                                   | Image key                                       | Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.                                                                                                                                                                                           | S-22                   |
| 6   |                                   | Machine's memory<br>key                         | Press this key to select from 3 memory functions; retrieving, storing or reset.                                                                                                                                                                                       | S-22,<br>S-96,<br>S-98 |
|     |                                   | "L/R SHIFT" key                                 | Shows the tendency of Left/Right of the center line of the original zigzag stitch currently selected stitch pattern.                                                                                                                                                  | S-11                   |
| 8   |                                   | Thread tension key                              | Shows the automatic thread tension setting of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to change the thread tension settings.                                                                                                       | S-12                   |
| 9   | 12:00                             | Clock key                                       | Press this key to set the clock to your local time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | B-16                   |

| No. | Display      | Key Name                                         | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Page    |
|-----|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 10  |              | Presser foot/Needle                              | Press this key before changing the needle, the presser foot, etc. This key locks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | B-45 to |
|     |              | exchange key                                     | all key and button functions to prevent operation of the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |         |
| 1   | ?            | Sewing machine help key                          | Press this key to see explanations on how to use the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | B-26    |
| 12  |              | Machine setting<br>mode key                      | Press this key to change the needle stop position, change the volume of operation sound, adjust the pattern or screen, and change other machine settings.                                                                                                                                                                |         |
| 13  | WIDTH LENGTH | Stitch width and stitch length key               | Shows the zigzag width and stitch length settings of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to adjust the zigzag width and stitch length settings.                                                                                                                                   |         |
| 14  |              | Mirror image key                                 | Press this key to create a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern. If the key display is light gray, a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn.                                                                                                                                                  |         |
| 15  | ×            | Automatic thread<br>cutting key                  | Press this key to set the automatic thread cutting function. Set the automatic thread cutting function before sewing to have the machine automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches) and trim the threads after sewing. |         |
| 16  |              | Automatic<br>reverse/reinforcement<br>stitch key | Press this key to use the automatic reverse/reinforcement stitching setting.<br>If you select this setting before sewing, the machine will automatically sew<br>reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches depending on the pattern, at the<br>beginning and end of sewing.                                              | S-5     |
| 17  | 60           | Free motion mode<br>key                          | Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode.<br>The presser foot is raised to an appropriate height and the feed dog is lowered<br>for free motion quilting.                                                                                                                                                         |         |
| 18  | 4            | Pivot key                                        | <ul> <li>Press this key to select the pivot setting. When the pivot setting is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered.</li> <li>If this key appears as </li> </ul>        | S-15    |
|     |              |                                                  | <ul> <li>Be sure the needle position on page B-22 of Machine Settings is set to the down position.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                            |         |

For additional operational information, refer to page reference number listed above.

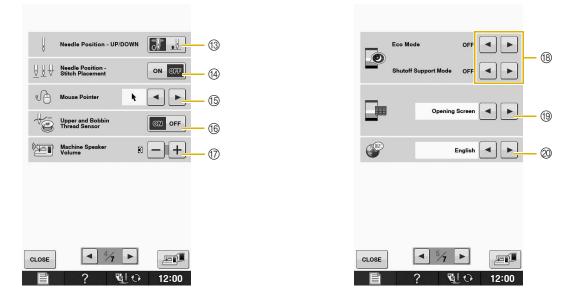


- ① Select whether to use the sewing speed controller to determine the zigzag width (see page S-39).
- ② Make adjustments to character or decorative stitch patterns (see page S-82).
- ③ Adjust the presser foot height. (Select the height of the presser foot when the presser foot is raised.)
- ④ Adjust the presser foot pressure. (The higher the number, the greater the pressure will be. Set the pressure at "3" for normal sewing.) (see page S-17) If the dual feed foot is installed and its roller is lowered, the pressure setting is fixed at "2" and cannot be changed.
- ⑤ Fine tune the feed of the dual feed foot (see page B-51).
- 6 Select whether "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is the utility stitch that is automatically selected when the machine is turned on. (see page S-21)
- ⑦ Select whether "Utility Stitch" or "Quilt Stitch" displayed first on the stitch selection screen when the "Utility and Decorative Stitches" is selected.
- ⑧ Select the multi-function foot controller settings as indicated in the chart below. (These settings are only applicable when the multi-function foot controller is attached to the machine.)

| Controller                | Functions that can be specified                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Main foot controller      | Start/Stop                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Heel switch<br>Side pedal | Select any of the following:<br>• [Thread Cutting]<br>• [Needle Position Up/Down]<br>• [Single Stitch]<br>• [Reverse Stitch] (Reinforcement Stitch)<br>• [Presser Foot Up/Down]<br>• [No setting] |

- ③ Change the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped when the pivot setting is selected (see page S-15). Adjust the presser foot to one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm and 7.5 mm). (see page S-15)
- 1 Change the height of the presser foot when the machine is set to free motion sewing mode (see page S-40).
- (1) When set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by an internal sensor while sewing. This enables the fabric to be fed smoothly (see pages S-8 and S-17).
- 0 Press to save the current settings screen image to USB media (see page B-25)

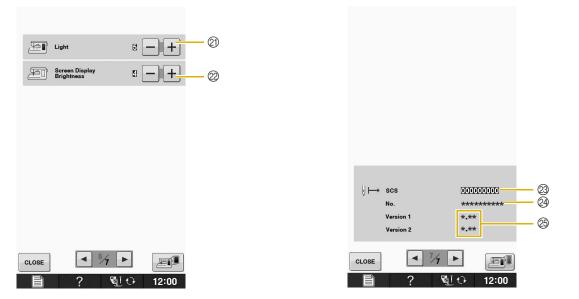
B



- ③ Select the needle stop position (the needle position when the machine is not operating) to be up or down. Select the down position when using the pivot key. (see page S-15)
- ③ Select the operation of the "Needle Position Stitch Placement" button from the following two sequences (see page S-18).
  - Each press of the "Needle Position Stitch Placement" button:
  - "ON" raises the needle, stops it at a nearly lowered position, then lowers it
  - "OFF" raises the needle, then lowers it
- (5) Change the shape of the pointer when a USB mouse is used (see page B-24).
- 16 Turn the "Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor" "ON" or "OFF". If it is turned "OFF", the machine can be used without thread. (see page S-4, see Caution note at bottom of page)

# **A** CAUTION

- If "Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor" is set to "OFF", remove the upper thread. If the machine is used with the upper thread threaded, the machine will not be able to detect if the thread has become tangled. Continuing to use the machine with tangled thread may cause damage.
- ⑦ Change the speaker volume. Increase the number for louder volume, decrease for softer volume.
- 18 Select to save the machine power by setting the "Eco Mode" or the "Shutoff Support Mode" (see page B-24).
- (9) Select the initial screen that is displayed when the machine is turned on (see page B-25).
- ② Change the display language (see page B-25).



- 2 Change the brightness of the needle area and work area lights.
- ② Change the screen display brightness (see page A-6).
- ② Display the total number of stitches sewn on this machine, which is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized retailer for details.)
- ② The "No." is the internal machine number for the sewing machine.
- Display the program version. "Version 1" shows the program version of the LCD panel, "Version 2" shows the program version of the machine.

#### Memo

• Check with your local authorized Baby Lock retailer or at <u>www.babylock.com</u> for the current version update (see page A-20).

B

### Selecting the "Eco Mode" or "Shutoff Support Mode"

You can save the machine power by setting the eco mode or the shutoff support mode. If you leave the machine without using for a specified period of time, the machine enters in one of these modes.

#### "Eco Mode";

Machine will enter a sleep mode. Touch the screen or press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.

#### "Shutoff Support Mode";

Machine will enter lower power modes after set period of time. Turn machine off and then back on to restart sewing.

| Condition           | Eco Mode                                        | Shutoff Support<br>Mode           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Available time      | OFF, 1 - 120 (minute)                           | OFF, 1 - 12 (hour)                |
| "Start/Stop" button | Green flashing                                  | Green slow flashing               |
| Suspended function  | Machine light,<br>Screen display                | All functions                     |
| After recovering    | The machine starts from the previous operation. | You need to turn off the machine. |

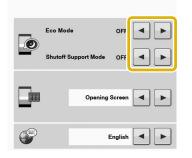
Press the "Start/Stop" button or touch the screen display to recover from these modes.

| 1 | Press | Ê | • |
|---|-------|---|---|
|---|-------|---|---|

 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

Display page 5 of the settings screen.





#### Note

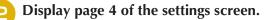
• If you turn off the machine while the machine is in the "Eco Mode" or the "Shutoff Support Mode", wait for about 5 seconds before turning on the machine again.

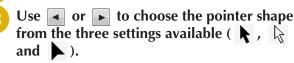
# Changing the Pointer Shape When a USB Mouse Is Used

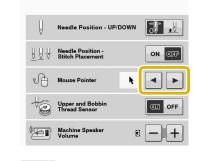
In the settings screen, the shape can be selected for the pointer that appears when a USB mouse is connected.



 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.









Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

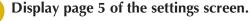
Memo
The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

### Selecting the Initial Screen Display

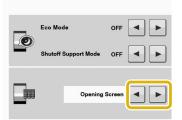
The Initial screen that appears on the machine can be changed.



 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.



Use or b to select the setting for the initial screen display.



- \* **Opening Screen:** When the machine is turned on, the sewing screen appears after the opening movie screen is touched.
- \* Sewing Screen: When the machine is turned on, the sewing screen appears.

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

### Choosing the Display Language

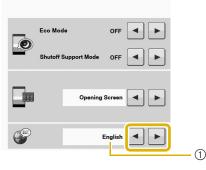


 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

Display page 5 of the settings screen.



Use **and b** to choose the display language.



1 Display language

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

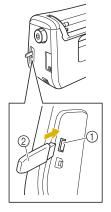
### Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media

An image of the settings screen can be saved as a BMP file.

A maximum of 100 images can be saved on a single USB media at one time.



Insert the USB media into the USB port on the right side of the machine.





### Press

→ The settings screen appears. Select the settings screen page, make the changes that you want, and then save the screen image.

Press 🗐

 $\rightarrow$  The image file will be saved to the USB media.

Remove the USB media, and then for future reference, check the saved image using a computer.

The files for Settings screen images are saved with the name "S##.BMP".

"##" in the name "S##.BMP" will automatically be replaced with a number between S00 and S99.

#### 🗸 Note

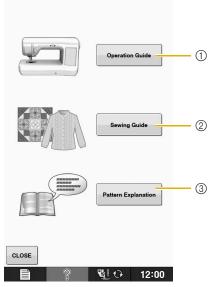
 If 100 image files have already been saved on the USB media, the following message appears. In this case, delete a file from the USB media or use different USB media.

|                | 3       |  |
|----------------|---------|--|
| Failed to save | e file. |  |
|                |         |  |
|                |         |  |
|                |         |  |
|                |         |  |
| CLOSE          |         |  |

B

# Using the Sewing Machine Help Key

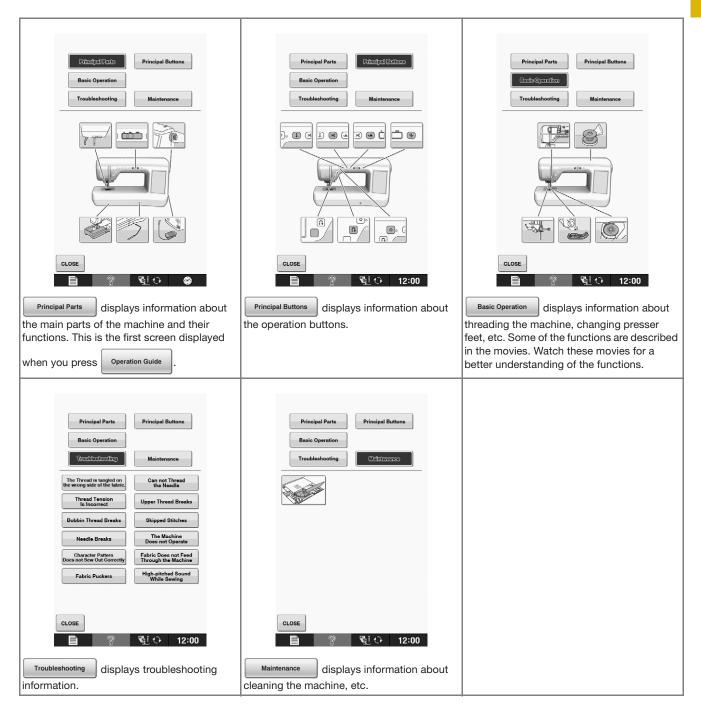
Press **Press** to open the sewing machine help screen. Three functions are available from the screen shown below.

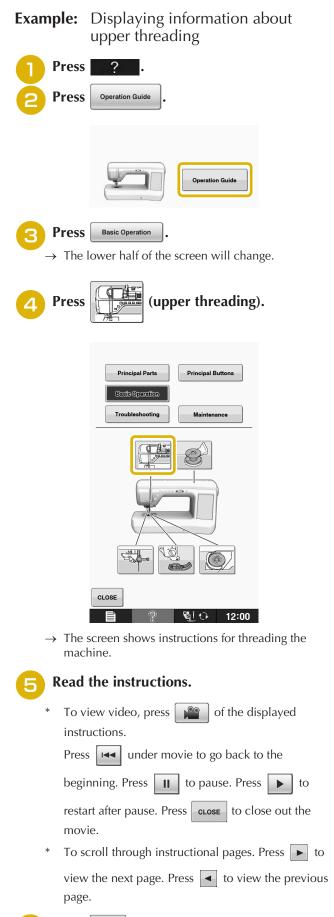


- ① Press this key to see explanation for upper threading, winding the bobbin, changing the presser foot, how to use the machine, troubleshooting and maintenance (see page B-27).
- ② Press this key to select utility stitches when you are not sure which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch (see page B-28).
- ③ Press this key to see an explanation of the stitch selected (see page B-29).

# Using the Operation Guide Function

Press Operation Guide to open the screen shown below. Five categories are displayed at the top of the screen. Press a key to see more information about that category.



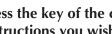


**Press CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

## Using the Sewing Guide Function

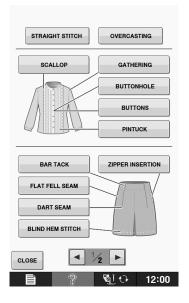
The sewing guide function can be used to select patterns from the Utility Stitch screen. Use this function when you are not sure which stitch to use for your application, or to get advice about sewing particular stitches. For example, if you want to sew overcasting, but you do not know which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch, you can use this screen to get advice. We recommend that beginners use this method to select stitches.





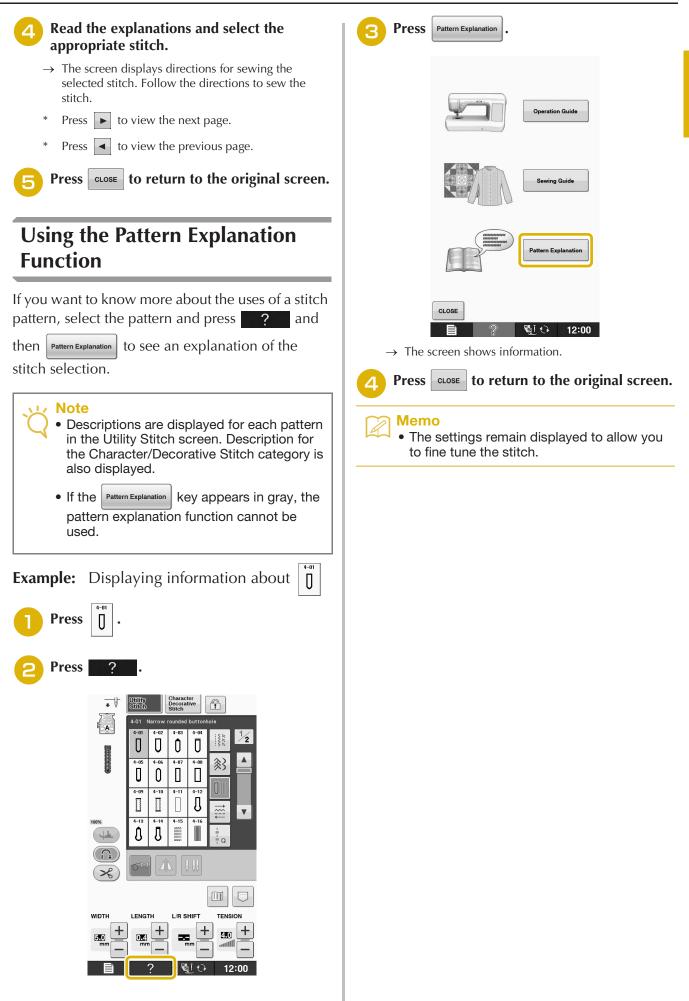
Press the key of the category whose sewing instructions you wish to view.

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

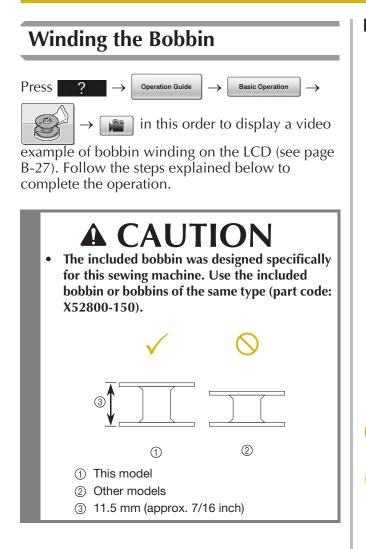


B

Getting Ready

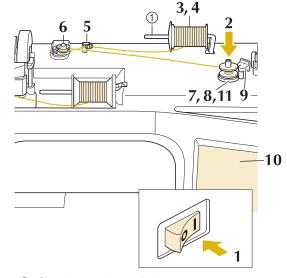


# LOWER THREADING



### Using the Supplemental Spool Pin

With this machine, you can wind the bobbin without unthreading the machine. While using the main spool pin to sew, you can conveniently wind the bobbin using the supplemental spool pin.



① Supplemental spool pin

Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.

Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



① Groove in the bobbin

Spring on the shaft



Set the supplemental spool pin in the "up" position.



- ① Supplemental spool pin
- Place the spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that thread unrolls from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



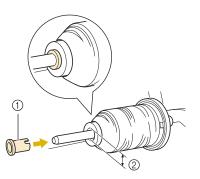
- Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

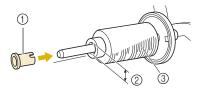
# **A** CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium or small) or the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

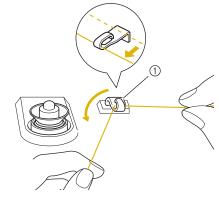
#### Memo

- When using the spool as shown below, use the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool).
- Make sure that the thread spool insert is firmly inserted. After installing it, pull out some thread, and check that the thread unwinds without getting caught.



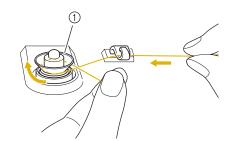


- ① Thread spool insert (mini king thread spool)
- Hole diameter 8.0mm to 10.5mm (5/16 inch to 13/32 inch)
- ③ Spool (cross-wound thread)
- 5 With your right hand, hold the thread near the thread spool. With your left hand, hold the end of the thread, and use both hands to pass the thread through the thread guide.

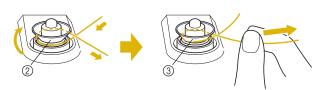


① Thread guide

Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.

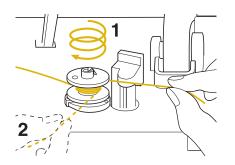


- ① Pre-tension disk
- $\rightarrow\,$  Make sure that the thread passes under the pre-tension disk.



- ② Pre-tension disk
- ③ Pull it in as far as possible.
- → Check to make sure thread is securely set between pre-tension disks.

# Wind the thread clockwise around the bobbin 5-6 Times.



**B** Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and pull the thread to the right to cut the thread with the cutter.

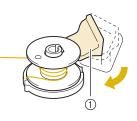


- ① Guide slit (with built-in cutter)
- ② Bobbin winder seat

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to follow the process described. If the thread is not cut with the cutter, and the bobbin is wound, when the thread runs low it may tangle around the bobbin and cause the needle to break.
- 9

Set the bobbin winding switch to the left, until it clicks into place.

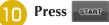


① Bobbin winding switch

#### 🏹 Memo

 Sliding the bobbin winding switch to the left switches the machine into bobbin winding mode.

 $\rightarrow$  The bobbin winding window appears.



→ Bobbin winding starts automatically. The bobbin stops rotating when bobbin winding is completed. The bobbin winding switch will automatically return to its original position.



#### 🖳 Note

- **START** changes to **STOP** while the bobbin is winding.
- Stay near the machine while winding the bobbin to make sure the bobbin thread is being wound correctly. If the bobbin thread

is wound incorrectly, press stop immediately to stop the bobbin winding.

• The sound of winding the bobbin with stiff thread, such as nylon thread for quilting, may be different from the one produced when winding normal thread; however, this is not a sign of a malfunction.

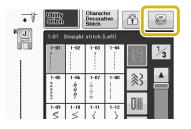
#### א Memo

• You can change the winding speed by pressing - (to decrease) or + (to

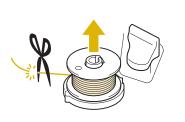
increase) in the bobbin winding window.



- Press **CLOSE** to minimize the bobbin winding window. Then, you can perform other operations, such as selecting a stitch or adjusting the thread tension, while the bobbin is being wound.
- Press (in top right of the LCD screen) to display the bobbin winding window again.



U Cut the thread with scissors and remove the bobbin.



#### א Memo

• When removing the bobbin, do not pull on the bobbin winder seat. Doing so could loosen or remove the bobbin winder seat, and could result in damage to the machine.

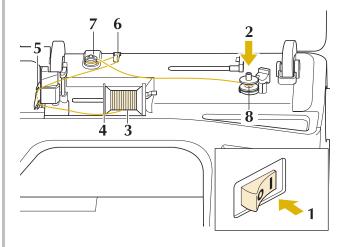


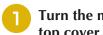
• Setting the bobbin improperly may cause the thread tension to loosen, breaking the needle and possibly resulting in injury.



### Using the Spool Pin

You can use the main spool pin to wind the bobbin before sewing. You cannot use this spool pin to wind the bobbin while sewing.



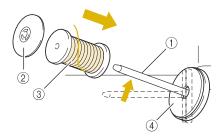


Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.

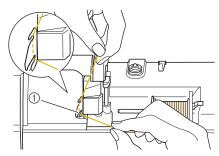
Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



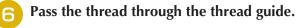
- (1) Groove in the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft
- Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.

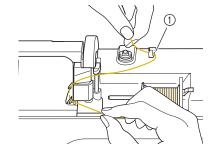


- ① Spool pin
- 2) Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- ④ Spool felt
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.
- While holding the thread with both hands, pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.

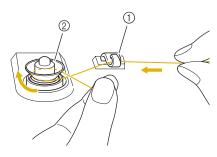


① Thread guide plate





- ① Thread guide
- Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.

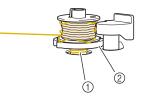


- ① Thread guide
- ② Pre-tension disk
- Follow steps **7** through **1** on page B-32 through B-33.

### Untangling Thread from Beneath the **Bobbin Winder Seat**

If the bobbin winding starts when the thread is not passed through the pre-tension disk correctly, the thread may become tangled beneath the bobbin winder seat.

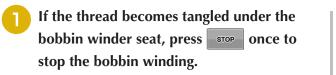
Wind off the thread according to the following procedure.



- ① Thread
- ② Bobbin winder seat

# **CAUTION**

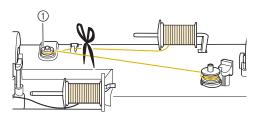
Do not remove the bobbin winder seat even if the thread becomes tangled under the bobbin winder seat. It may result in injuries.







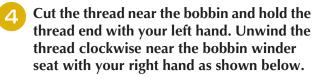
Cut the thread with scissors near the pre-tension disk.

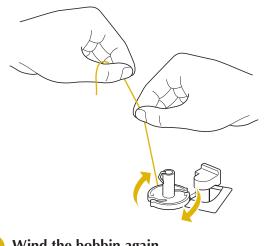


Pre-tension disk

Push the bobbin winder switch to the right, and then raise the bobbin at least 10 cm (4 inches) from the shaft.









Wind the bobbin again.

Note

 Make sure that the thread passes through the pre-tension disk correctly (page B-32).

## Setting the Bobbin



**Basic Operation Operation Guide** 

in this order to display a video

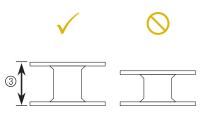
example of the operation on the LCD (see page B-27). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.



Use a bobbin thread that has been correctly wound. Otherwise, the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.



The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: X52800-150).



2

- ① This model
- ② Other models
- ③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

1

Before inserting or changing the bobbin, be sure you have pressed **UO** in the LCD to lock all keys and buttons, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.

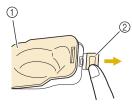
#### Press 🔮 🗘 to lock all keys and buttons, and then raise the presser foot.

- If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot? " appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.
- $\rightarrow$  The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

B





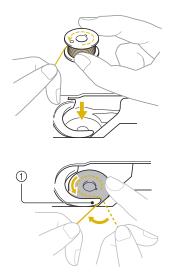


- ① Bobbin cover
- ② Latch
- $\rightarrow$  The bobbin cover opens.



Remove the bobbin cover.

Insert the bobbin with your right hand so that the end of the thread is on the left, and then, after pulling the thread firmly around the tab with your left hand as shown, lightly pull the thread to guide it through the slit.



#### ① Tab

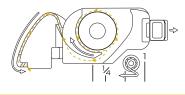
\* Be sure to insert the bobbin correctly.

## **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to install the bobbin so that the thread unwinds in the correct direction, otherwise the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.

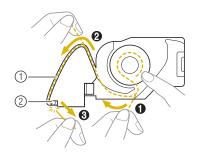
#### Memo

 The order that the bobbin thread should be passed through the bobbin case is indicated by marks around the bobbin case. Be sure to thread the machine as indicated.



- 5 While lightly holding down bobbin with your right hand as shown, guide the thread through the slit (1 and 2).
  - \* At this time, check that the bobbin easily rotates counterclockwise.

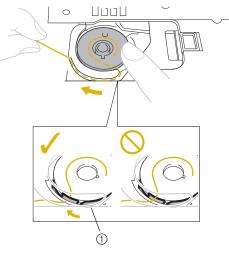
Then, pull the thread toward you to cut it with the cutter (③).



① Slit

- ② Cutter (Cut the thread with the cutter.)
- $\rightarrow$  The cutter cuts the thread.

Make sure that the thread is correctly passed through the flat spring of the bobbin case. If it is not inserted correctly, reinstall the thread.

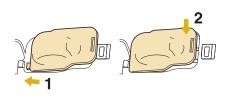


① Flat spring

## **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to hold down the bobbin with your finger and unwind the bobbin thread correctly. Otherwise, the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.

6 Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover (1), and then lightly press down on the right side to close the cover (2).





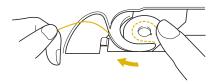
Press to unlock all keys and buttons.

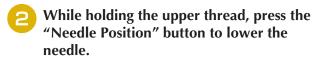
## Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread

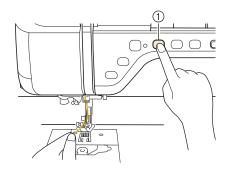
There may be some sewing applications where you want to pull up the bobbin thread; for example, when making gathers, darts, or doing free motion quilting.

#### n Memo

- You can pull up the bobbin thread after threading the upper thread ("UPPER THREADING" on page B-38).
- Guide the bobbin thread through the groove, following the arrow in the illustration.
- \* Do not cut the thread with the cutter.
- \* Do not replace the bobbin cover.

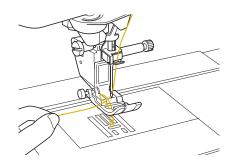




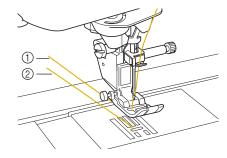


① "Needle Position" button

- **B** Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- 4 Press 📲 to lock all keys and buttons.
- **5** Gently pull the upper thread. A loop of the bobbin thread will come out of the hole in the needle plate.



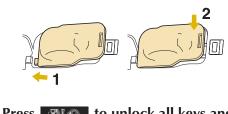
Pull up the bobbin thread, pass it under the presser foot and pull it about 100 mm (approx. 4 inches) toward the back of the machine, making it even with the upper thread.



Upper thread
 Bobbin thread



Replace the bobbin cover.



Press to unlock all keys and buttons.

## **UPPER THREADING**

## Upper Threading

| Press | ? | $\rightarrow$ |
|-------|---|---------------|

in this order to display a video

Basic Operation

 $\rightarrow$ 

example of the operation on the LCD (see page B-27). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

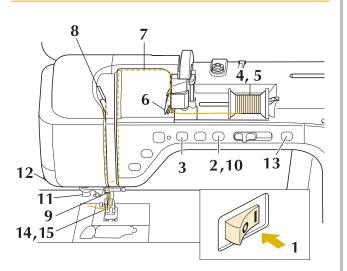
Operation Guide

## **A** CAUTION

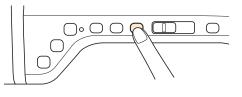
- Be sure to thread the machine properly. Improper threading can cause the thread to tangle and break the needle, leading to injury.
- When using the walking foot, the side cutter or accessories not included with this machine, attach the accessory to the machine after threading the machine.

#### Memo

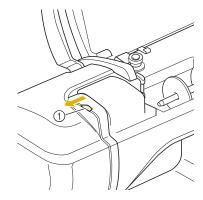
- The automatic threading function can be used with sewing machine needle sizes 75/11 through 100/16.
- Thread such as transparent nylon monofilament thread and thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker cannot be used with the automatic threading function.
- The automatic threading function cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.



- Turn the main power to ON.
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The upper thread shutter opens so the machine can be threaded.



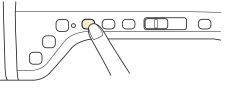
① Upper thread shutter

#### 🦙 Memo

• This machine is equipped with an upper thread shutter, allowing you to check that the upper threading is performed correctly.

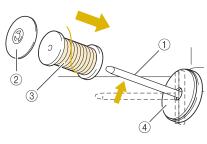


Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



#### <sub>と</sub>Note

 If you try to thread the needle automatically without raising the needle, the thread may not thread correctly. Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



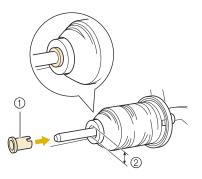
- Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- ④ Spool felt
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.

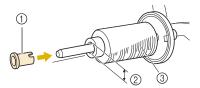
## **A** CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) or the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

#### Memo

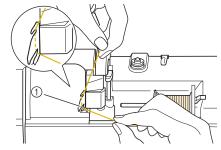
- When using the spool as shown below, use the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool).
- Make sure that the thread spool insert is firmly inserted. After installing it, pull out some thread, and check that the thread unwinds without getting caught.





- ① Thread spool insert (mini king thread spool)
- Hole diameter 8.0mm to 10.5mm (5/16 inch to 13/32 inch)
- ③ Spool (cross-wound thread)

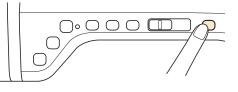
6 While holding the thread with both hands, place the thread behind the thread guide plate.



① Thread guide plate

Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to While holding the thread in your right 10 hand, pass the thread through the thread lower presser foot. guide in the direction indicated.  $\bigcirc \circ \bigcirc \bigcirc$  $\square$  $\cap$ Pass the thread through the thread guide disks (marked "7"). Make sure that the thread passes through the groove in the thread guide. Guide the thread down, up, then down through the groove, as shown in the illustration. ① Groove in thread guide Pull the thread up through the thread cutter 12 to cut the thread, as shown in the illustration. Memo · Look in the upper groove area to check if the thread catches on the take-up lever visible inside the upper groove area. ① Thread cutter Note ① Look in the upper groove area When using thread that quickly winds off the spool, such as metallic thread, it may be difficult to thread the needle if the thread is Pass the thread through the needle bar cut. thread guide (marked "6") by holding the Therefore, instead of using the thread thread with both hands and guiding it as cutter, pull out about 80 mm (approx. 3 shown in the illustration. inches) of thread after passing it through the thread guide disks (marked "7"). (1) Needle bar thread guide (1) 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) or more

#### Press the "Automatic Threading" button to have the machine automatically thread the needle.



 $\rightarrow$  The thread passes through the eye of the needle.

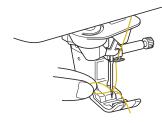
#### Memo

• When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered. After threading is finished, the presser foot moves back to the position before the "Automatic Threading" button was pressed.



#### **A** Carefully pull the end of the thread that was passed through the eye of the needle.

If a loop was formed in the thread passed through the eye of the needle, carefully pull on the loop of thread through to the back of the needle.

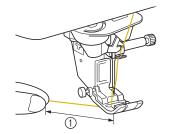


#### Note

 Pulling the loop of thread gently will avoid needle breakage.

#### Pull out about 10-15 cm (approx. 4-6 inches) of the thread, and then pass it under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.

 $\rightarrow$  Raise the presser foot lever if the presser foot is lowered.



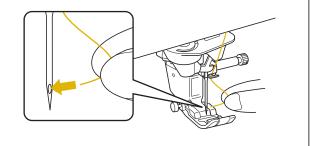
(1) About 10-15 cm (approx. 4-6 inches)

#### Memo

• If the needle could not be threaded or the thread was not passed through the needle bar thread guides, perform the procedure again starting from step 3.

#### Note

 Some needles cannot be threaded with the needle threader. In this case, instead of using the needle threader after passing the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked "6"), manually pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front to the back.



## Using the Twin Needle Mode

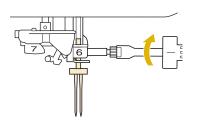
The twin needle can only be used for patterns that

show **IIII** after being selected. Before you select a

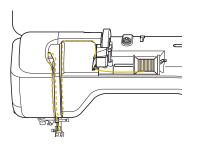
stitch pattern, make sure the stitch can be sewn in the twin needle mode (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68).

## **A** CAUTION

- Twin needle (part code X59296-151) is recommended for this machine. Contact your authorized retailer for replacement needles (size 2.0/11 is recommended).
- Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.
- Do not sew with bent needles. The needle could break and cause injury.
- When using the twin needle, it is recommended to use presser foot "J".
- When the twin needle is used, bunched stitches may occur depending on the types of fabric and thread that are used. Use monogramming foot "N" for decorative stitches.
- Before changing the needle or threading the machine, be sure you have pressed on the LCD Screen to lock all keys and buttons, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.
- Press since to lock all keys and buttons and install the twin needle ("CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page B-47).



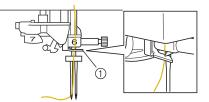
**2** Thread the machine for the first needle according to the procedure for threading a single needle ("Upper Threading" on page B-38).



3

4

Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar, then thread the needle on the left side manually.



① Needle bar thread guide

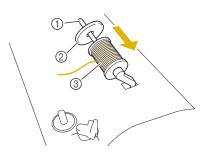
 Note
 The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Manually thread the twin needle from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.

Pull up the supplemental spool pin and set it in the up position.

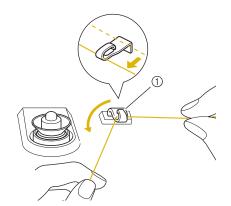


① Supplemental spool pin

Place the additional spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that the thread unwinds from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.

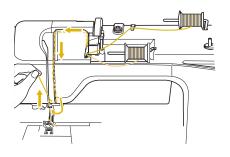


- ① Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- B Hold the thread from the spool with both hands, and place the thread in the thread guide.
  - \* Do not place the thread in the pre-tension disks.

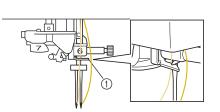


① Thread guide

While holding the thread from the spool, pull the thread through the lower notch in the thread guide plate, then through the upper notch. Hold the end of the thread with your left hand, and then guide the thread through the groove, following the arrows in the illustration.



8 Continue threading however do not pass the thread in the needle bar thread guide "6" on the needle bar. Thread the needle on the right side.



- ① Needle bar thread guide
- **9** Press **W** to unlock all keys and buttons.
- Select a stitch pattern. (Example:
  - Refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68 for the proper stitch to use with presser foot "J".
  - $\rightarrow\,$  The selected stitch is displayed.

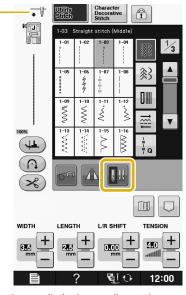
#### Vie Note

 If the I key is light gray after selecting the stitch, the selected stitch cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.

to select the twin needle mode.

#### Press

1



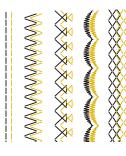
- ① Single needle/twin needle setting
  - → 😱 🐺 appears.

## **CAUTION**

• Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.

## 12 Start sewing.

Sample of Twin Needle Sewing



#### ן Memo

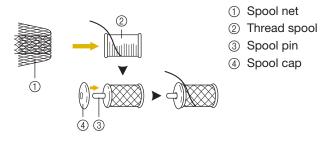
• To change direction when sewing with the twin needle, raise the needle from the fabric, raise the presser foot lever, and then turn the fabric.

# Using Threads that Unwind Quickly

## ■ Using the Spool Net

If using transparent nylon monofilament thread, metallic thread, or other strong thread, place the included spool net over the spool before using it. When using specialty threads, threading must be done manually.

If the spool net is too long, fold it once to match it to the spool size before placing it over the spool.



## Memo

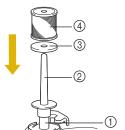
- When threading the spool with the spool net on, make sure that 5 cm - 6 cm (approx. 2 inches - 2-1/2 inches) of thread are pulled out.
- It may be necessary to adjust the thread tension when using the spool net.

## ■ Using the Vertical Spool Pin

Use the vertical spool pin when using an irregularly shaped thread spool, and when sewing with metallic thread.



## Insert the vertical spool pin onto the bobbin winder shaft.



- ① Bobbin winder shaft
- ② Vertical spool pin
- Spool felt
- ④ Thread spool
- Install the spool felt and the thread spool in that order, and then thread the upper thread.

#### 🏹 Memo

- When setting the thread spool, set it so that the thread winds off from the front of the spool.
- If using metallic thread, we recommend that you use a 90/14 home sewing machine needle.
- Using the vertical spool pin with certain types of threads will keep the thread from twisting as it comes off the spool pin.

## **CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT**

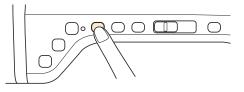
# **A** CAUTION

- Always press **Q**O on the screen to lock all keys and buttons before changing the presser foot. If s not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another button is pressed, the machine will start and may cause injury.
- Always use the correct presser foot for the selected stitch pattern. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, and may cause injury.
- Use presser feet made for this machine.

## **Removing the Presser Foot**



Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.





#### **Press U o** lock all keys and buttons.

- If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot? " appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.
- $\rightarrow$  The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

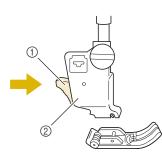


#### Raise the presser foot lever.





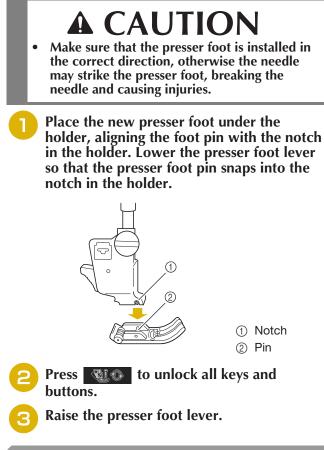
Press the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



## 1) Black button

(2) Presser foot holder

## **Attaching the Presser Foot**



## Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter

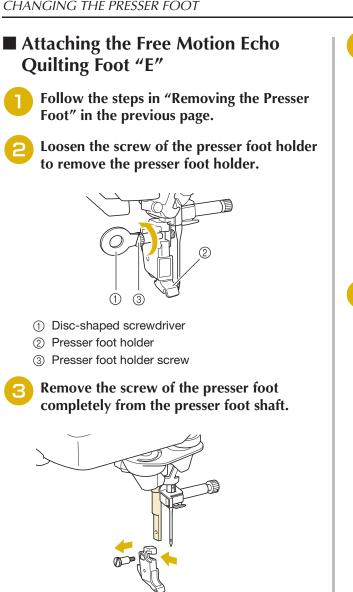
You can attach the free motion echo quilting foot "E" and the optional walking foot, the optional free motion quilting foot and so on, using the included adapter and small screw.

The following procedure shows how to attach the free motion echo quilting foot "E" as an example.

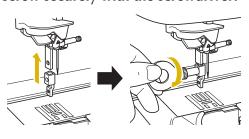




Getting Ready



Set the adapter on the presser foot bar, aligning the flat side of the adapter opening with the flat side of the presser bar. Push it up as far as possible, and then tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.



Attach the free motion echo quilting foot "E" on the left side of the adapter with the holes in the quilting foot and adapter aligned.





Tighten the screw with the included screwdriver.





## **A** CAUTION

Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.

## CHANGING THE NEEDLE

## **A** CAUTION

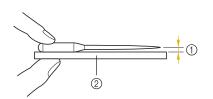
Always press <u>U</u>O on the screen to lock all keys and buttons before changing the needle.
 If <u>U</u>O is not pressed and the Start/Stop button or another operation button is pressed

button or another operation button is pressed accidentally, the machine will start and injury may result.

- Use only sewing machine needles made for home use. Other needles may bend or break and may cause injury.
- Never sew with a bent needle. A bent needle will easily break and may cause injury.

#### 🔊 Memo

• To check the needle correctly, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface. Check the needle from the top and the sides. Throw away any bent needles.

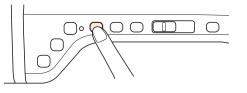


① Parallel space

② Level surface (bobbin cover, glass, etc.)



Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



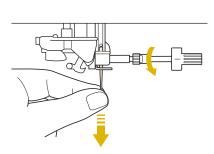


#### Press **UO** to lock all keys and buttons.

- If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot? " appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.
- → The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

#### 🟒 Note

• Before replacing the needle, cover the hole in the needle plate with fabric or paper to prevent the needle from falling into the machine. Use the screwdriver to turn the screw toward the front of the machine and loosen the screw. Remove the needle.

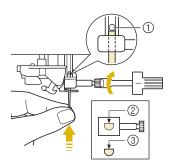


#### 🟒 Note

 Do not apply pressure to the needle clamp screw. Doing so may damage the needle or machine.



With the flat side of the needle facing the back, insert the new needle all the way to the top of the needle stopper (viewing window) in the needle clamp. Use a screwdriver to securely tighten the needle clamp screw.



- $\textcircled{1} \quad \text{Needle stopper}$
- ② Hole for setting the needle
- ③ Flat side of needle

## **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to push in the needle until it touches the stopper, and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with a screwdriver. If the needle is not completely inserted or the needle clamp screw is loose, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

Press to unlock all keys and buttons.

## ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC

## About the Needle

The sewing machine needle is probably the most important part of the sewing machine. Choosing the proper needle for your sewing project will result in a beautiful finish and fewer problems. Below are some things to keep in mind about needles.

- The smaller the needle number, the finer the needle. As the numbers increase, the needles get thicker.
- Use fine needles with lightweight fabrics, and thicker needles with heavyweight fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 with stretch fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 when sewing character or decorative stitches.

## Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

The following table provides information concerning the appropriate thread and needle for various fabrics. Please refer to this table when selecting a thread and needle for the fabric you wish to use.

| Fabric type/Application |                    | Thread           |         | Size of needle                  |
|-------------------------|--------------------|------------------|---------|---------------------------------|
|                         |                    | Туре             | Size    |                                 |
| Medium weight fabrics   | Broadcloth         | Cotton thread    | 60 - 90 | 75/11 - 90/14                   |
|                         | Taffeta            | Synthetic thread |         |                                 |
|                         | Flannel, Gabardine | Silk thread      | 50      |                                 |
| Thin fabrics            | Lawn               | Cotton thread    | 60 - 90 | 65/9 - 75/11                    |
|                         | Georgette          | Synthetic thread |         |                                 |
|                         | Challis, Satin     | Silk thread      | 50      |                                 |
| Thick fabrics           | Denim              | Cotton thread    | 30      | 90/14 - 100/16                  |
|                         |                    |                  | 50      | -                               |
|                         | Corduroy           | Synthetic thread | 50 - 60 | -                               |
|                         | Tweed              | Silk thread      |         |                                 |
| Stretch fabrics         | Jersey             | Thread for knits | 50 - 60 | Ball point needle               |
|                         | Tricot             |                  |         | (gold colored)<br>75/11 - 90/14 |
| Easily frayed fabrics   |                    | Cotton thread    | 50 - 90 | 65/9 - 90/14                    |
|                         |                    | Synthetic thread |         |                                 |
|                         |                    | Silk thread      | 50      | 1                               |
| For top-stitching       |                    | Synthetic thread | 30      | 100/16                          |
|                         |                    | Silk thread      | 50 - 60 | 90/14 - 100/16                  |

🗸 Note

• Never use a thread of weight 20 or lower. It may cause malfunctions.

#### 🔊 Memo

• For transparent monofilament nylon thread, always use needle sizes 90/14 or 100/16. The same thread is usually used for the bobbin thread and upper thread.

## **A** CAUTION

Be sure to follow the needle, thread, and fabric combinations listed in the table. Using an improper combination, especially a heavyweight fabric (i.e., denim) with a small needle (i.e., 65/9 - 75/11), may cause the needle to bend or break, and lead to injury. Also, the seam may be uneven, the fabric may pucker, or the machine may skip stitches.

# USING FUNCTIONS BY CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE

## Using USB Media



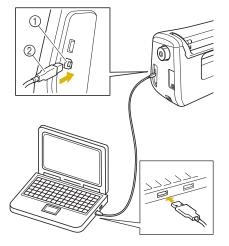
- ① USB port for mouse/media
- ② USB media

#### 🏹 Memo

- USB media is widely used, however some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.

# **Connecting the Machine to the Computer**

Using the included USB cable, the sewing machine can be connected to your computer.



- ① USB port for computer
- ② USB cable connector

#### 🟒 Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

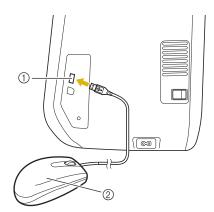
## Using a USB Mouse

A USB mouse, connected to the sewing machine, can be used to perform a variety of operations in the screens.

#### Vice Note

Use a basic computer mouse to operate the machine functions.

Some USB mouse devices may not be compatible with this machine.



- ① USB port for mouse/media
- ② USB mouse

#### 🟒 Note

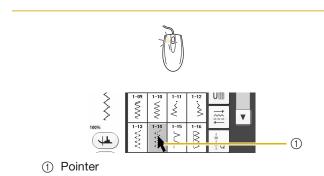
- Do not perform operations with the mouse at the same time that you are touching the screen with your finger or the included touch pen.
- A USB mouse can be connected or disconnected at any time.
- Only the left mouse button and its wheel can be used to perform operations. No other buttons can be used.

## Clicking a Key

When the mouse is connected, the pointer appears on the screen. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired key, and then click the left mouse button.

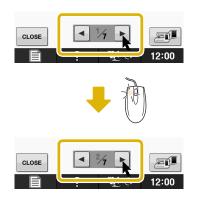
## Memo

• Double-clicking has no effect.



## Changing Pages

If page numbers and a vertical scroll bar for additional pages are displayed, click the left mouse button with the pointer on 
/ 
or 
/ 
to display the previous or next page.



## Using the Dual Feed Foot

Dual feed foot enables you to have best fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics that slip easily, such as quilted fabrics, or fabrics that tend to stick to the bottom of a presser foot, such as vinyl, leather or synthetic leather.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

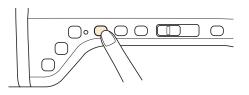
• When sewing with the dual feed foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

## n Memo

- When selecting stitches to be used with the dual feed foot, only the stitches that can be used will be activated on the display.
- When sewing fabric that easily sticks together, a more attractive finish can be achieved by basting the beginning of sewing.

## Attaching the Dual Feed Foot

Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

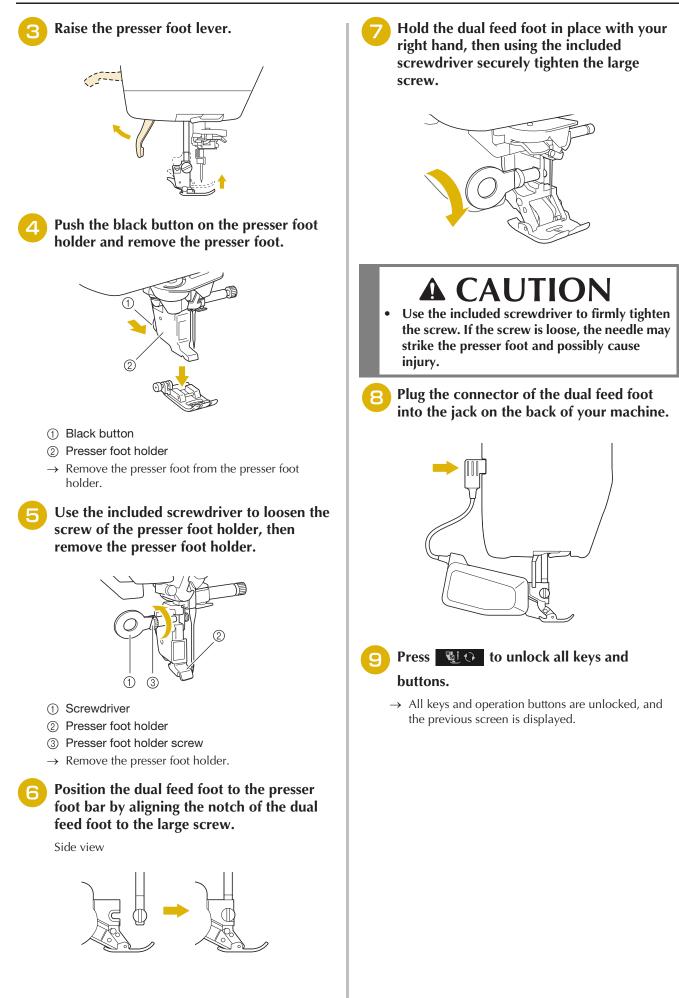


## Press 📲 🕂 to lock all keys and buttons.

→ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

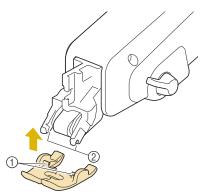
## **A** CAUTION

When attaching a presser foot, always press on the screen to lock all keys and buttons. You may accidentally press the "Start/Stop" button and possibly cause injury.



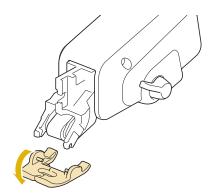
## Attaching/Detaching Toe

Attach the toe by aligning the pins with the notches and snap it into place.



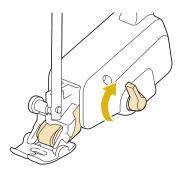
- ① Pins
- ② Notches

If you push down on the front part of the dual feed foot, the toe of the dual feed foot will snap off.

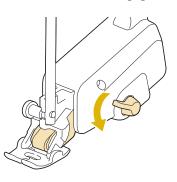


## ■ Using the Dual Feed Position Lever

When the feed position lever is up, the black roller belt on the dual feed is not engaged.



When the feed position lever is down, the black roller belt on the dual feed is engaged.



## Vie Note

• Do not operate the lever while sewing.

## Adjusting the Amount of Fabric Feeding of the Dual Feed Foot

The dual feed mechanism pulls the top fabric according to the set stitch length. With troublesome fabrics, fine tune the set length, by changing the dual feed feed adjustment in the settings screen.

#### 🗸 Note

• As a default, some keys mentioned in the following procedures appear in light gray and are not available. To enable the keys for specifying the settings, attach the dual feed foot and connector to the machine. The keys are enabled after the dual feed foot is detected.

## Press 📄

 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

Display page 1 of the settings screen.

## **3** Use – or + to increase or decrease the feeding of the top fabric.

- \* Select "00" for sewing in most cases.
- \* If the feed amount for the top fabric is too little, causing the fabric to be longer than the bottom

fabric, press + to increase the feed amount for the top fabric.

\* If the feed amount for the top fabric is too much, causing the fabric to be shorter than the bottom

fabric, press — to decrease the feed amount for the top fabric.

| X     | Dual Feed Feed<br>Adjustment | α[-         | -+    |
|-------|------------------------------|-------------|-------|
|       |                              |             |       |
| CLOSE | <ul> <li>1/7</li> </ul>      |             |       |
| Ê     | ? 5                          | ₫ <u></u> 0 | 12:00 |

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.



This section describes procedures for using the various utility stitches as well as other functions. It provides details on basic sewing in addition to the more expressive features of the machine, from sewing tubular pieces and buttonholes to sewing the character and decorative stitch patterns.

Page number starts with "S" in this section.

The screen display and machine illustration may vary slightly, depending on the countries or regions.

| Chapter1 Sewing Basics                      | S-2   |
|---------------------------------------------|-------|
| Chapter2 Utility Stitches                   | S-20  |
| Chapter3 Character/Decorative Stitches      | S-76  |
| Chapter4 How to Create Bobbin Work (Sewing) | S-104 |

# **S** Sewing

# Chapter **1** Sewing Basics

| SEWING3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sewing a Stitch3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Using the Foot Controller                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Sewing Reinforcement Stitches5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Automatic Reinforcement Stitching5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Sewing Curves7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Changing Sewing Direction7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| If the Fabric does not Feed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Sewing Lightweight Fabrics9                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Sewing Stretch Fabrics9                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| STITCH SETTINGS10                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Setting the Stitch Width10                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Setting the Stitch Width10<br>Setting the Stitch Length11                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Setting the Stitch Length11                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Setting the Stitch Length                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Setting the Stitch Length                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Setting the Stitch Length                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13         USEFUL FUNCTIONS       14                                                                                                                                                            |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13         USEFUL FUNCTIONS       14         Automatic Thread Cutting       14                                                                                                                  |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13         USEFUL FUNCTIONS       14         Automatic Thread Cutting       14         Using the Knee Lifter       15         Pivoting       15         Automatic Fabric Sensor System       15 |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13         USEFUL FUNCTIONS       14         Automatic Thread Cutting       14         Using the Knee Lifter       15         Pivoting       15                                                 |
| Setting the Stitch Length       11         Setting the "L/R SHIFT"       11         Setting the Thread Tension       12         Proper Thread Tension       12         Upper Thread is Too Tight       12         Upper Thread is Too Loose       13         USEFUL FUNCTIONS       14         Automatic Thread Cutting       14         Using the Knee Lifter       15         Pivoting       15         Automatic Fabric Sensor System       15 |

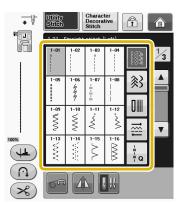
## SEWING

# 

- To avoid injury, pay special attention to the needle while the machine is in operation. Keep your hands away from moving parts while the machine is in operation.
- Do not stretch or pull the fabric during sewing. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not use bent or broken needles. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not attempt to sew over basting pins or other objects during sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.
- If stitches become bunched, lengthen the stitch length setting before continuing sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

## Sewing a Stitch

- Turn the main power to ON and display the utility stitches, and push the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
  - Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.

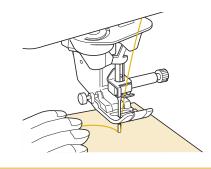


→ The symbol of the correct presser foot will be displayed in the upper left corner of the LCD screen.

Install the presser foot ("CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" of "Basic operations").

## **A** CAUTION

 Always use the correct presser foot. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, possibly resulting in injury. Refer to page S-68 for presser foot recommendations. Set the fabric under the presser foot. Hold the fabric and thread in your left hand, and rotate the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position.

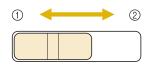


## Memo

• The black button on the left side of presser foot "J" should be pressed only if the fabric does not feed or when sewing thick seams (see page S-8). Normally, you can sew without pressing the black button.

## Lower the presser foot.

- \* You do not have to pull up the bobbin thread.
- Adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide.
  - \* You can use this slide to adjust sewing speed during sewing.

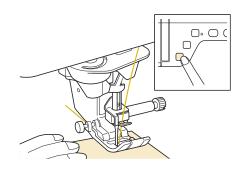


- ① Slow
- ② Fast



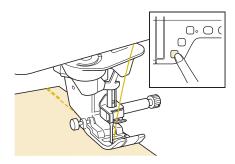
## Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.

\* Guide the fabric lightly by hand.



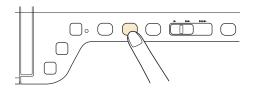
#### ן <mark>Memo</mark>

- When the foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the "Start/Stop" button.
- Press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop sewing.





## Press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the upper and lower threads.



 $\rightarrow$  The needle will return to the up position automatically.

## **A** CAUTION

- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button after the threads have been cut. Doing so could tangle the thread or break the needle and damage the machine.
- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button when there is no fabric set in the machine or during machine operation. The thread may tangle, possibly resulting in damage.

# Note When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon monofilament thread, or other decorative threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.



When the needle has stopped moving, raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.

#### Memo

• This machine is equipped with a bobbin thread sensor that warns you when the bobbin thread is almost empty. When the bobbin thread is nearly empty, the machine automatically stops. However, if the "Start/Stop" button is pressed, a few stitches can be sewn. When the warning displays, re-thread the machine immediately.

## ■ Using the Foot Controller

You can also use the foot controller to start and stop sewing.

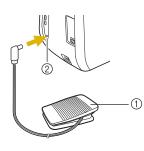


• Do not allow fabric pieces and dust to collect in the foot controller. Doing so could cause a fire or an electric shock.

#### 河 Memo

• When the foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the "Start/Stop" button.

## Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.

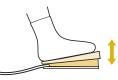


Foot controller

Foot controller jack



Slowly depress the foot controller to start sewing.



#### Memo

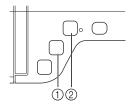
 The speed that is set using the sewing speed controller is the foot controller's maximum sewing speed.

Release the foot controller to stop the machine.

## **Sewing Reinforcement Stitches**

Reverse/reinforcement stitches are generally necessary at the beginning and end of sewing. You can use the "Reverse Stitch" button to sew reverse/reinforcement stitches.

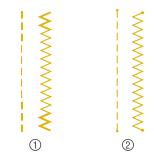
When you keep pressing the "Reinforcement Stitch" button, the machine will sew reinforcement stitch at that point 3 to 5 stitches, and then stop.



1 "Reverse Stitch" button

2 "Reinforcement Stitch" button

If the automatic reinforcement stitch is selected on the screen, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches automatically at the end of sewing.



① Reverse stitch ② Reinforcement stitch

The operation performed when the button is pressed differs depending on the selected pattern. Refer to the table in "Automatic Reinforcement Stitching" on page S-5.)

## Memo

- When you press the "Reinforcement Stitch" button while sewing character/decorative stitch pattern, you can end sewing with a full stitch instead of at a mid-point.
  - The green light on the right of the "Reinforcement Stitch" button lights up while the machine is sewing a full motif, and it automatically turns off when the sewing is stopped.

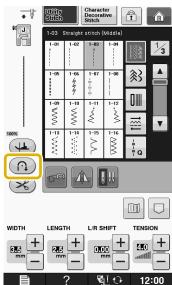
## Automatic Reinforcement Stitching

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing.



## Select a stitch pattern.





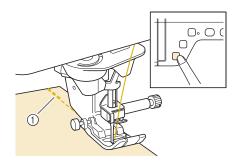
 $\rightarrow$  The key will display as  $\bigcirc$ .

#### 🔊 Memo

 Some stitches, such as buttonholes and bar tacks, require reinforcement stitches at the beginning of sewing. If you select one of these stitches, the machine will automatically turn on this function (the key

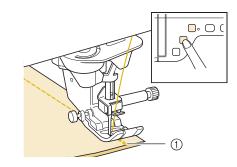
appears as ( when the stitch is selected).

## Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button.



- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and stop.

#### Memo

 To turn off the automatic reinforcement stitching function, press again, so it appears as .

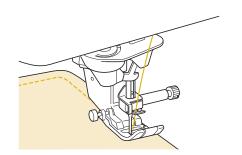
The operation performed when the button is pressed differs depending on the selected pattern. Refer to the following table for details on the operation that is performed when the button is pressed.

|                                                           | "Reverse Stitch"                                                                                                            | "Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Utility         +           1-01         1-08             | Machine starts<br>sewing the stitches<br>and only sews reverse<br>stitches while holding<br>the "Reverse Stitch"<br>button. | Machine starts<br>sewing the stitches<br>and sews 3 - 5<br>reinforcement<br>stitches while holding<br>the "Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button. |
| Utility<br>stitch         +           1-02         1-04   | Machine starts<br>sewing the stitches<br>and only sews reverse<br>stitches while holding<br>the "Reverse Stitch"<br>button. | Machine starts<br>sewing the stitches<br>and sews 3 - 5<br>reinforcement<br>stitches while holding<br>the "Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button. |
| Utility<br>Stitch +                                       | Machine sews<br>reverse stitches at the<br>beginning and end of<br>sewing.                                                  | Machine sews<br>reverse stitches at the<br>beginning and<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the end of<br>sewing.                              |
| Utility<br>Stitch         + ♠           1-02         1-04 | Machine sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the<br>beginning and reverse<br>stitches at the end of<br>sewing.              | Machine sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the<br>beginning and end of<br>sewing.                                                         |

|                                   | "Reverse Stitch"<br>button                                                                                                                             | "Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Character<br>Decorative<br>Strich | Machine starts<br>sewing and then sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches while holding<br>the "Reverse Stitch"<br>button.                                   | Machine starts<br>sewing at the<br>beginning, then<br>completes the pattern<br>and sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the end of<br>sewing.                  |
| Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | Machine sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the<br>beginning and sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches when the<br>"Reverse Stitch"<br>button is touched. | Machine sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the<br>beginning, then<br>completes the pattern<br>and sews<br>reinforcement<br>stitches at the end of<br>sewing. |

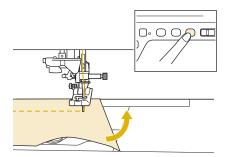
## Sewing Curves

Sew slowly while keeping the seam parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



## **Changing Sewing Direction**

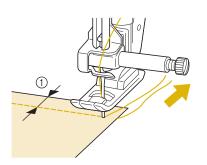
Stop the machine. Leave the needle in the fabric, and press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot. Using the needle as a pivot, turn the fabric so that you can sew in the new direction. Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.



The pivot setting is useful when changing the sewing direction. When the machine is stopped at the corner of the fabric, the machine stops with the needle in the fabric and the presser foot is automatically raised so the fabric can easily be rotated ("Pivoting" on page S-15).

# Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less

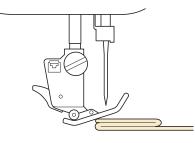
Baste the corner before sewing, and then, after changing the sewing direction at the corner, pull the basting thread toward the back while sewing.



① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

## Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics

The sewing machine can sew fabrics up to 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick. If the thickness of a seam causes sewing to occur at an angle, help guide the fabric by hand and sew on the downward slope.

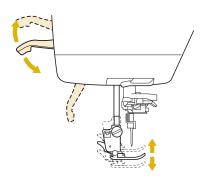


## **A** CAUTION

- Do not forcefully push fabrics more than 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick through the sewing machine. This may cause the needle to break and cause injury.
- Thicker fabrics require a larger needle. Refer to "ABOUT THE NEEDLE AND FABRIC" of "Basic operations".

## If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot

If the presser foot is in the up position, and you are sewing heavyweight or multiple layers of fabric which do not fit easily under the presser foot, use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot to its highest position. The fabric will now fit under the presser foot.



#### 🦙 Memo

• You cannot use the presser foot lever after the presser foot has been raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.

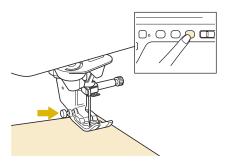
## ■ If the Fabric does not Feed

If the fabric does not feed when starting to sew or when sewing thick seams, press the black button on the left side of presser foot "J".



Raise the presser foot.

While keeping the black button on the left side of presser foot "J" pressed in, press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.



Release the black button.



→ The presser foot remains level, enabling the fabric to be fed.

#### 🏹 Memo

- Once the trouble spot has been passed, the foot will return to its normal position.
- When "Automatic Fabric Sensor System" (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) in the machine settings screen is set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by the internal sensor so the fabric can be fed smoothly for best sewing results. (see page S-17 for details.)

## Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener

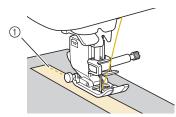
## **A** CAUTION

- Do not use adhesive backed hook-and-loop fastener designed for sewing. If the adhesive sticks to the needle or the bobbin hook race, it may cause malfunction.
- If the hook-and-loop fastener is sewn with a fine needle (65/9-75/11), the needle may bend or break.

#### 🟒 Note

Before starting to sew, baste the fabric and hook-and-loop fastener together.

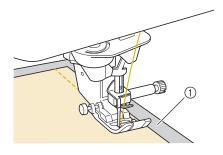
Make sure that the needle passes through the hook-and-loop fastener by rotating the handwheel and lower the needle into the hook-and-loop fastener before sewing. Sew the edge of the hook-and-loop fastener at a slow speed. If the needle does not pass through the hook-and-loop fastener, replace the needle with the needle for thick fabrics ("Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" of "Basic operations").



① Edge of the hook-and-loop fastener

## Sewing Lightweight Fabrics

Place thin paper or tear away embroidery stabilizer under thin fabrics to make sewing easier. Gently tear off the paper or the stabilizer after sewing.



① Thin paper

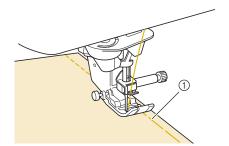
## **Sewing Stretch Fabrics**

First, baste together the pieces of fabric, and then sew without stretching the fabric.

In addition, a better result can be achieved by using thread for knits or a stretch stitch.

#### Memo

• For best results when sewing stretch fabrics, decrease the pressure of the presser foot ("Using the Machine Setting Mode Key" of "Basic operations").



① Basting stitching

## **STITCH SETTINGS**

When you select a stitch, your machine automatically selects the appropriate stitch width, stitch length, "L/R SHIFT", and upper thread tension. However, if needed, you can change any of the individual settings.

ப் Note

- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68).
- If you turn off the machine or select another stitch without saving stitch setting changes ("Saving Your Stitch Settings" on page S-22), the stitch settings will return to their default settings.

## Setting the Stitch Width

Follow the steps below when you want to change the zigzag stitch pattern width.

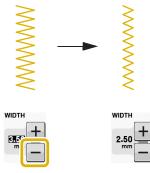


#### 🦙 Memo

• For an alternate method of changing the stitch width using the speed controller, see page S-39.

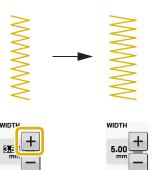
## Example:

Press — to narrow the zigzag stitch pattern width.



 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets smaller.

Press + to widen the zigzag stitch pattern width.



 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets bigger.

#### Memo

Press stress after pressing D to return to the original setting.

#### 🟒 Note

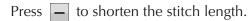
• After adjusting the stitch width, slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

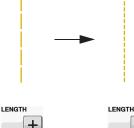
## Setting the Stitch Length

Follow the steps below when you want to change the stitch pattern length.



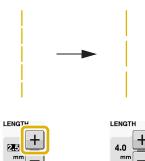
## Example:

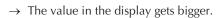






 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets smaller. Press + to lengthen the stitch length.





## Memo

- Press in to check changes made to the stitch.
- Press est after pressing to return to the original setting.

## **CAUTION**

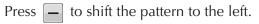
• If the stitches get bunched together, lengthen the stitch length and continue sewing. Do not continue sewing without lengthening the stitch length. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

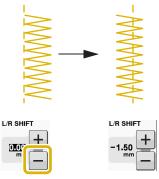
## Setting the "L/R SHIFT"

Follow the steps below when you want to change the placement of the zigzag stitch pattern by moving it left and right.

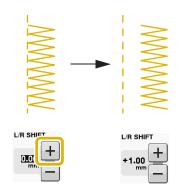


## Example:





 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display appears with a minus sign. Press + to shift the pattern to the right side of the left needle position.



 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display appears with a plus sign.

#### 🔊 Memo

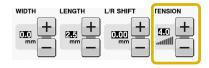
• Press after pressing 🖸 to return to the original setting.

## <sub>レ</sub>Note

• After adjusting the "L/R SHIFT", slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

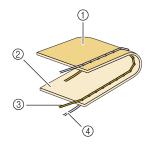
## Setting the Thread Tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used. Follow the steps below to make any necessary changes.



## Proper Thread Tension

The upper thread and the bobbin thread should cross near the center of the fabric. Only the upper thread should be visible from the right side of the fabric, and only the bobbin thread should be visible from the wrong side of the fabric.



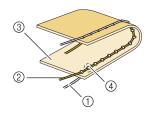
- ① Wrong side
- ② Surface
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Bobbin thread

## Upper Thread is Too Tight

If the bobbin thread is visible on the right side of the fabric, the upper thread is too tight.

#### V Note

 If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may appear to be too tight. In this case, refer to "Setting the Bobbin" of "Basic operations" and rethread the bobbin thread.

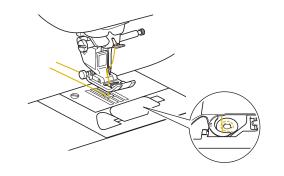


- ① Bobbin thread
- Upper thread
- ③ Surface
- ④ Locks appear on surface of fabric

Press \_\_\_\_, to loosen the upper thread.

#### Memo

• When you finish sewing, remove the bobbin cover and then make sure that the thread is shown as below. If the thread is not shown as below, the thread is not inserted through the tension-adjusting spring of the bobbin case correctly. Reinsert the thread correctly. For details, refer to "Setting the Bobbin" of "Basic operations".

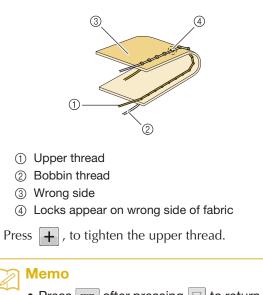


## Upper Thread is Too Loose

If the upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric, the upper thread is too loose.

#### 🕂 Note

 If the upper thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may appear to be too loose. In this case, refer to "Upper Threading" of "Basic operations" and rethread the upper thread.



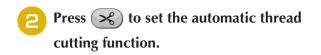
• Press est after pressing to return to the original setting.

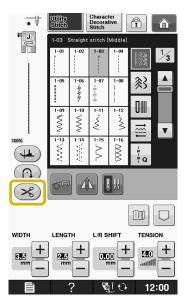
## **USEFUL FUNCTIONS**

## Automatic Thread Cutting

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic thread cutting function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing, and trim the threads at the end of sewing. This function is useful when sewing buttonholes and bar tacks.

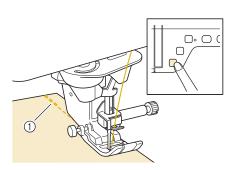
Select a stitch pattern.





 $\rightarrow$  The key will display as  $\bigotimes$ .

Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



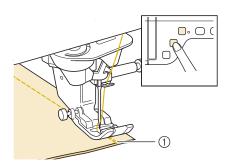
- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

#### n Memo

```
• If you press the "Start/Stop" button to
pause sewing, press the same button again
to continue. The beginning
reverse/reinforcement stitches will not be
sewn again.
```



Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button.



- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches), then trim the thread.

#### Memo

• To turn off the automatic thread cutting

function, press (🔀) again, so it appears

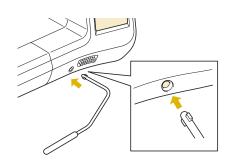


## Using the Knee Lifter

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.



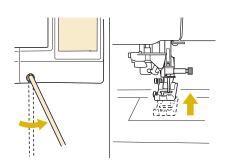
Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the knee lifter slot on the front of the machine. Insert the knee lifter bar as far as possible.



#### 🟒 Note

• If the knee lifter bar is not pushed into the mounting slot as far as possible, it may come out during use.

Use your knee to move the knee lifter bar to the right in order to raise the presser foot. Release the knee lifter to lower the presser foot.



## **A** CAUTION

 Be sure to keep your knee away from the knee lifter during sewing. If the knee lifter is pushed during machine operation, the needle may break or the thread tension may loosen.

#### 🔊 Memo

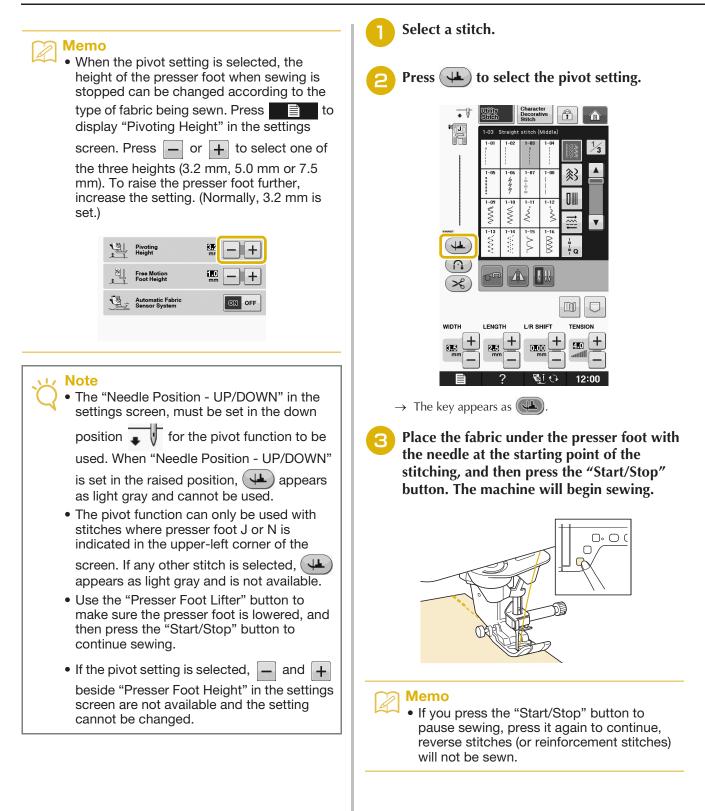
• When the presser foot is in the up position, move the knee lifter to the far right and then release to return the presser foot to the down position.

## Pivoting

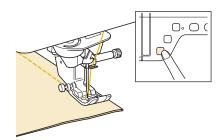
If the pivot setting is selected, the machine stops with the needle lowered (in the fabric) and the presser foot is automatically raised to an appropriate height when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. When the "Start/Stop" button is pressed again, the presser foot is automatically lowered and sewing continues. This function is useful for stopping the machine to rotate the fabric.

## **A** CAUTION

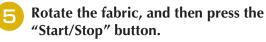
When the pivot setting is selected, the machine starts when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed or the foot controller is pressed down even if the presser foot has been raised. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle, otherwise injuries may occur.

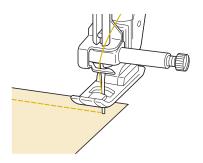


Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the machine at the point where the sewing direction changes.



→ The machine stops with the needle in the fabric, and the presser foot is raised.

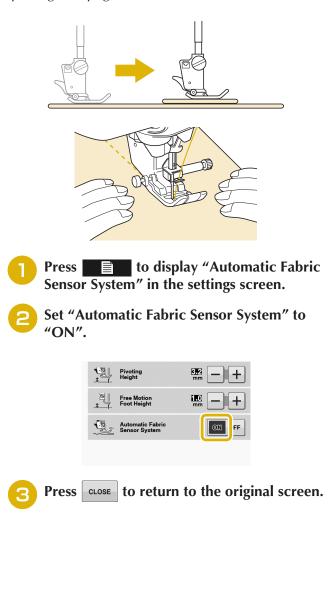




→ The presser foot is automatically lowered, and sewing continues.

## Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure)

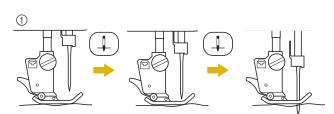
The thickness of the fabric is automatically detected and the presser foot pressure is automatically adjusted with an internal sensor while sewing, to insure that your fabric is fed smoothly. The fabric sensor system works continuously while sewing. This function is useful for sewing over thick seams (see page S-8), or quilting (see page S-35).



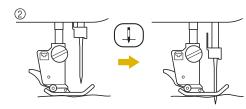
## **Needle Position – Stitch Placement**

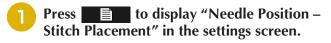
When the "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" is on, the needle will be partially lowered for precise stitch placement and then press the "Needle Position" button again to lower the needle completely. Each press of the "Needle Position" button changes the needle to the next position. When the "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" is turned off, each press of the "Needle Position" button simply raises and then lowers the needle.

- (1) Pointing needle mode is "ON"
- (2) Pointing needle mode is "OFF"

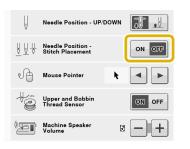


When the needle is nearly lowered by pressing the "Needle Position" button, the feed dogs are lowered. At this time, the fabric can be shifted to finely adjust the needle drop position.





Set "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" to "ON" or "OFF".





**Press CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

## Locking the Screen

If the screen is locked before starting to sew, the various settings such as the stitch width and stitch length are locked and cannot be changed. This prevents screen settings from accidentally being changed or the machine from being stopped while large pieces of fabric or projects are being sewn. The screen can be locked when sewing utility stitches and character decorative stitches.

- Select a stitch pattern. If necessary, adjust any settings such as the stitch width and stitch length.
  - **Press to lock the screen settings.**
  - $\rightarrow$  The key appears as  $\square$ .

Sew your project.



When you are finished sewing, press again to unlock the screen settings.

# **A** CAUTION

• If the screen is locked ( ), unlock the

screen by pressing 📻 . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.

The settings are unlocked when the machine is turned off and on.

# **S** Sewing

# Chapter 2 Utility Stitches

#### 

| Selecting a Stitch          | 21 |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Using the Mirror Image Key  | 21 |
| Using the Image Key         | 22 |
| Saving Your Stitch Settings | 22 |
| Saving Settings             | 22 |
| Retrieving Saved Settings   | 23 |
| SEWING THE STITCHES         | 24 |

#### Straight Stitches .....

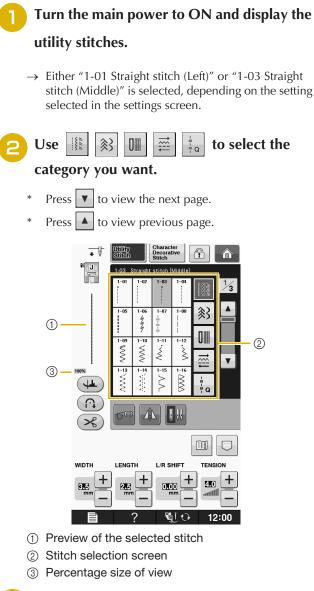
| Straight Stitches24                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position                    |
| Stitches Only)                                                                  |
| Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin                   |
| Cover (with Mark)                                                               |
| Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch<br>Foot          |
| ■ Basting                                                                       |
| Dart Seam                                                                       |
| Gathering                                                                       |
| Flat Fell Seam                                                                  |
| Pintuck                                                                         |
|                                                                                 |
| Zigzag Stitches                                                                 |
| <ul> <li>Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)</li></ul>                          |
| <ul> <li>Appingue (Using a Zigzag Strich)</li></ul>                             |
| <ul> <li>Fatchwork (or Crazy Quit)</li></ul>                                    |
| <ul> <li>Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)</li></ul>              |
| Elastic Zigzag Stitches                                                         |
| Tape Attaching                                                                  |
| Overcasting                                                                     |
| Overcasting                                                                     |
| Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"                                              |
| Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"                                              |
| Quilting                                                                        |
| Piecing                                                                         |
| Piecing Using the 1/4" Quilting Foot with Guide (optional with                  |
| some models)                                                                    |
| Appliqué                                                                        |
| Quilting with Satin Stitches                                                    |
| <ul> <li>Free Motion Quilting</li></ul>                                         |
| (optional with some models)                                                     |
| Blind Hem Stitches45                                                            |
| ■ If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold                                |
| If the Needle does not Catch the Hem Fold                                       |
| Appliqué48                                                                      |
| Appliqué Sharp Curves                                                           |
| Appliqué Corners 49                                                             |
| Shelltuck Stitches                                                              |
| Scallop Stitches                                                                |
| Crazy Quilting                                                                  |
| Smocking Stitches                                                               |
| Fagoting                                                                        |
| Tape or Elastic Attaching                                                       |
| Heirloom                                                                        |
| Hemstitching (1)                                                                |
| <ul> <li>Hemstitching (1)</li></ul>                                             |
| <ul> <li>Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))</li></ul>                            |
| One-step Buttonholes                                                            |
| Sewing Stretch Fabrics                                                          |
| <ul> <li>Gold Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button</li> </ul> |
| Holder Plate                                                                    |

| Darning                                                   | 58     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Bar Tacks                                                 | 59     |
| Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics                                | 61     |
| Button Sewing                                             | 61     |
| Attaching 4 Hole Buttons                                  | 62     |
| Attaching a Shank to the Button                           | 62     |
| Eyelet                                                    | 62     |
| Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stit | ch) 63 |
| Zipper Insertion                                          | 64     |
| Centered Zipper                                           | 64     |
| Inserting a Side Zipper                                   | 65     |
| TITCH SETTING CHART                                       | 68     |

## **SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES**

## Selecting a Stitch

There are 5 categories of Utility Stitches.



Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.

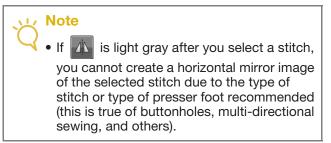
### 🏹 Memo

• For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.

## Using the Mirror Image Key

Depending on the type of utility stitch you select, you may be able to sew a horizontal mirror image of the stitch.

If is lit when you select a stitch, it will be possible to make a mirror image of the stitch.



Press **to create a horizontal mirror image of the** selected stitch.

The key will display as 🚺 .







### Using the Image Key

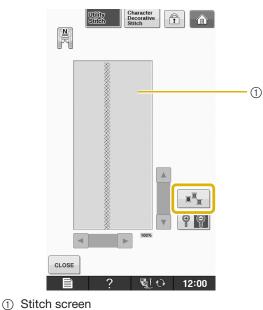
You can display an image of the selected stitch. You can check and change the colors of the image of the screen.

- 🌓 Press 🔟.
  - $\rightarrow$  An image of the selected stitch is displayed.

## Press to change the thread color of

### the stitch on the screen.

\* Press **Press** to display an enlarged image of the stitch.

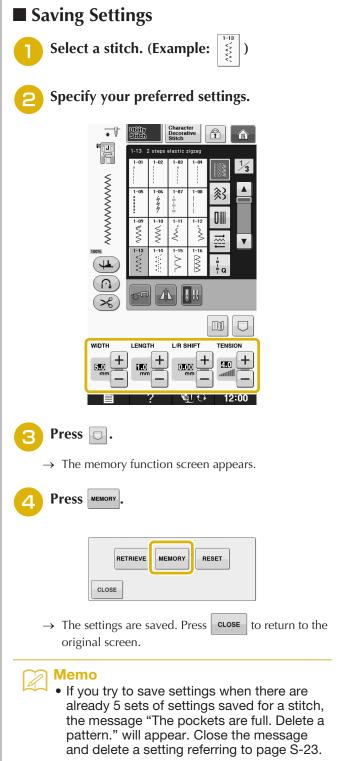


- 🏹 Memo
  - The color changes every time you press

**Press CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

## **Saving Your Stitch Settings**

The settings for the zigzag stitch width, stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting, automatic reinforcement stitching, etc., are preset in the machine for each stitch. However, if you have specific settings that you wish to reuse later for a stitch, you can change the settings so that they can be saved for that stitch. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch.



### Retrieving Saved Settings

### Select a stitch.

### Memo

 When a stitch is selected, the last settings retrieved are displayed. The last settings retrieved are retained even if the machine was turned off or a different stitch was selected.

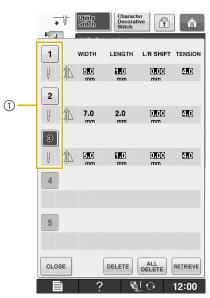
### Press 🗔 .

 $\rightarrow$  The memory function screen appears.

#### Press RETRIEVE.

### Press the numbered key of the settings to be retrieved.

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without \* retrieving settings.



Numbered keys



→ The selected settings are retrieved. Touch CLOSE and the original screen automatically appears.

#### Memo

To save new settings when there are • already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, press RETRIEVE in the memory function screen. Press the numbered key of the setting to be

deleted. Press DELETE and then OK . Press

CLOSE and then MEMORY . The new setting will be saved in place of the recently deleted setting.

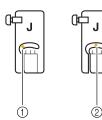
 You can delete all the saved settings by pressing ALL DELETE

## **SEWING THE STITCHES**

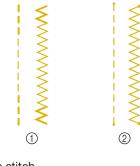
## **Straight Stitches**

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

| Stitch                      | Stitch name              | Presser foot                             |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1-01                        | Straight stitch (Left)   |                                          |
| 1-02                        | Straight stitch (Left)   |                                          |
| 1-03                        | Straight stitch (Middle) | J. J |
| 1-04                        | Straight stitch (Middle) |                                          |
| 1-05                        | Triple stretch stitch    |                                          |
| 1-06<br>4<br>7              | Stem stitch              |                                          |
| 1-07<br> <br>   <br>   <br> | Decorative stitch        |                                          |
| 1-08<br> <br> <br>          | Basting stitch           |                                          |



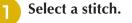
- ① Left needle position
- ② Middle needle position

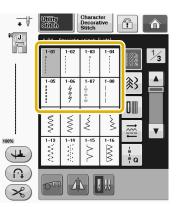


- ① Reverse stitch
- ② Reinforcement stitch

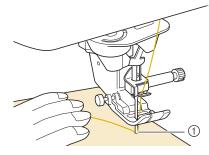
### Memo

• Refer to "Sewing Reinforcement Stitches" on page S-5 for the detailed information of reverse stitches and reinforcement stitches.





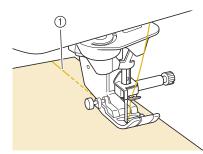
- Attach presser foot "J".
  - \* Attach presser foot "N" when you select
- 3 Hold the thread tail and fabric with your left hand, and rotate the handwheel with your right hand to insert the needle into the fabric.



- ① Sewing start position
- Lower the presser foot, and hold the "Reverse Stitch" or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 stitches.
  - $\rightarrow\,$  The machine sews reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches).



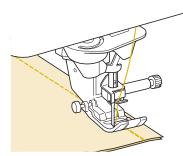
# Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew forward.



- ① Reverse stitches
- $\rightarrow$  The machine will begin sewing slowly.

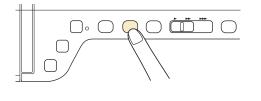
# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.
- When sewing is completed, hold the "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) at the end of the seam.





After sewing, press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.



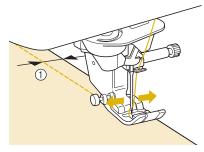
### Memo

 When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitch keys on the screen are selected, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse Stitch" or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.

### Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only)

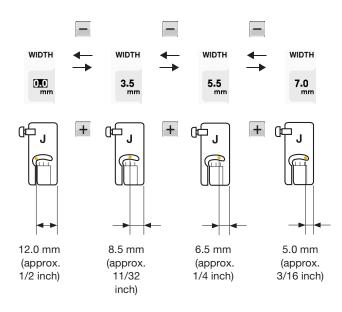
When you select left or middle needle position

stitches, you can use — and + in the stitch width display to change the position of the needle. Match the distance from the right edge of the presser foot to the needle with the stitch width, then align the edge of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric during sewing for an attractive finish.



① Stitch width

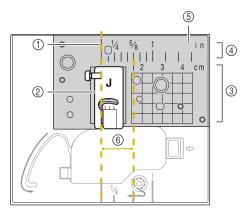
### Example: Left/Middle needle position stitches



### Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin Cover (with Mark)

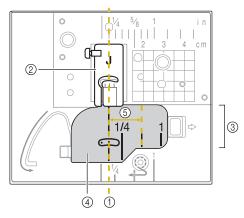
While sewing, align the edge of the fabric with the 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) mark on the needle plate or bobbin cover (with mark) depending on the needle position (left or middle (center) needle position stitches only).

## For stitches with a left needle position (Stitch width: 0.0 mm)



- ① Seam
- Presser foot
- ③ Centimeters
- ④ Inches
- ⑤ Needle plate
- 6 16 mm (5/8 inch)

## For stitches with a middle (center) needle position (Stitch width: 3.5 mm)

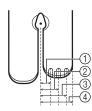


- ① Seam
- ② Presser foot
- ③ Inches
- ④ Bobbin cover (with mark)
- ⑤ 16 mm (5/8 inch)

## Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot

The straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot can only be used for straight stitches (middle needle position stitches). Use the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot when sewing thin fabrics or when sewing small pieces which tend to sink into the hole of the regular needle plate during sewing. The straight stitch foot is perfect to reduce puckering on lightweight fabrics. The small opening on the foot provides support for the fabric as the needle travels through the fabric.



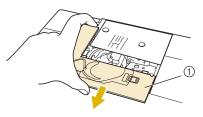




2.25 mm (1/8 inch)
 4.25 mm (3/16 inch)
 6.25 mm (1/4 inch)
 8.5 mm (5/16 inch)

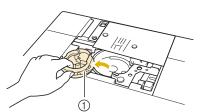
# **A** CAUTION

- Always use the straight stitch foot in combination with the straight stitch needle plate.
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle and turn the main power to OFF or press SUC to lock all keys and buttons.
- Remove the needle and the presser foot holder ("CHANGING THE NEEDLE" of "Basic operations").
  - Remove the flat bed attachment.
  - Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.



① Needle plate cover

### Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



1 Bobbin case

Use the disc-shaped screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the regular needle plate.



Set the straight stitch needle plate in place and use the disc-shaped screwdriver to tighten the plate.



① Round hole

#### 🟒 Note

• Align the two screw holes on the needle plate with the two holes on the machine. Use the disc-shaped screwdriver included with the machine to secure the screws in the needle plate.

- B Insert the bobbin case in its original position, and then attach the needle plate cover.
- After reinstalling the needle plate cover, select any of the straight stitches.

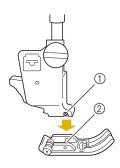
#### 🏹 Memo

- When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.
- Always secure the needle plate before inserting the bobbin case into its original position.
- "L/R SHIFT" does not work when straight stitch needle plate is on the machine.

# **A** CAUTION

- Selecting other stitches will cause an error message to be displayed.
- Slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before sewing and make sure that the needle is not contacting the straight stitch foot and straight stitch needle plate.
- 10

Insert needle and attach the straight stitch foot.



Notch
 Pin



## Press **U** to unlock all keys and buttons, and then start sewing.

\* After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot, and reinstall the regular needle plate, the needle plate cover and the presser foot "J".

#### 🏹 Memo

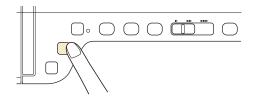
• To prevent puckering on fine fabrics, use a fine needle, size 75/11, and a short stitch length. For heavier fabrics, use a heavier needle, size 90/14, and longer stitches.

### Basting



 $\begin{bmatrix} 1^{-\infty} \end{bmatrix}$  and attach presser foot "J".

Press the "Reverse Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches, then continue sewing.



#### Memo

- When you use the basting stitch for gathering, do not use a reinforcement stitch at the beginning; you should lift the presser foot, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), pull up the bobbin thread and pull a length of top and bobbin thread out from the rear of the machine.
- You can set the stitch length between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)



① Between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)





End the basting with reinforcement stitches.

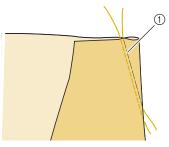
### **Dart Seam**



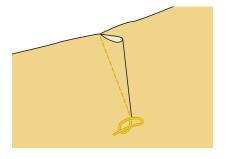
and attach presser foot "J".

Sew a reverse stitch at the beginning of the dart and then sew from the wide end to the other end without stretching the fabric.

\* If automatic reinforcement stitching is preset, a reinforcement stitch will automatically be sewn at the beginning of sewing.

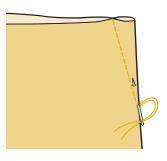


- ① Basting
- Cut the thread at the end leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches), and then tie both ends together.
- \* Do not sew a reverse stitch at the end.

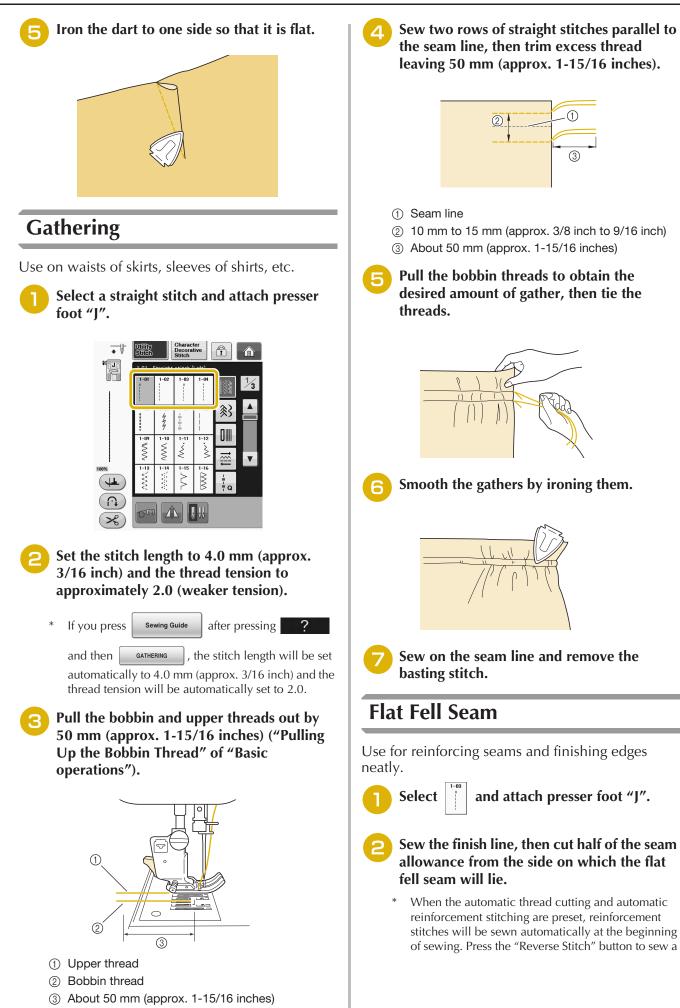


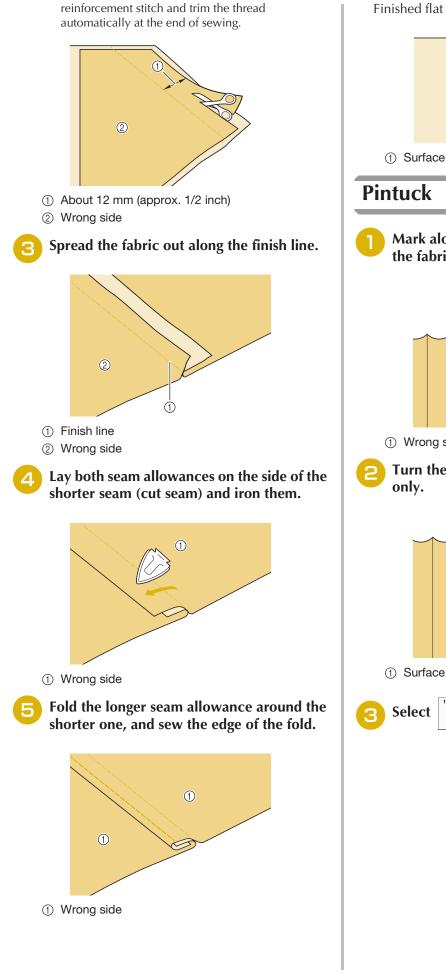
4

Insert the ends of the thread into the dart with a hand sewing needle.

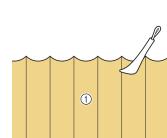


Utility Stitches

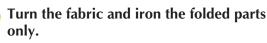


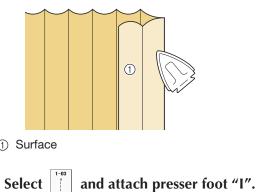


Finished flat fell seam 1 1 Mark along the folds on the wrong side of the fabric.



① Wrong side



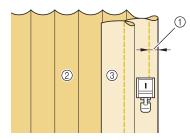


S-30



### Sew a straight stitch along the fold.

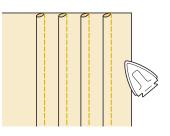
\* When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



- Width for pintuck
- ② Wrong side
- ③ Surface



Iron the folds in the same direction.



## Zigzag Stitches

Zigzag stitches are useful for overcasting, appliqué, patchwork, and many other applications.

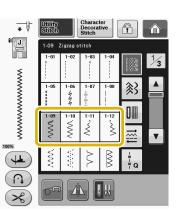
Select a stitch, and attach presser foot "J".

See page S-5 for the detailed information of reverse stitches and reinforcement stitches.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

| Stitch           | Stitch name           | Presser foot |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1-09             | Zigzag stitch         |              |
| 1-10             | Zigzag stitch         |              |
| 1-11             | Zigzag stitch (Right) |              |
| 1-12<br>.><br>.> | Zigzag stitch (Left)  |              |

Select a stitch.



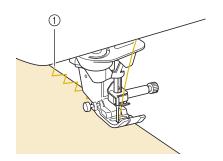




Attach presser foot "J".

### Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

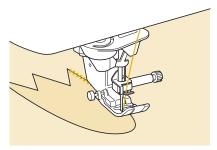


① Needle drop position

### Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

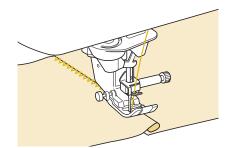
Attach the appliqué material using a temporary spray adhesive or basting, and then sew it.

\* Sew a zigzag stitch while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



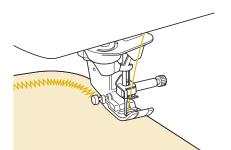
### Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)

Turn back the desired width of fabric and position it over the lower fabric, then sew so that the stitch bridges both pieces of fabric.



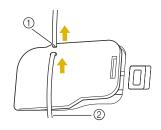
### Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Shorten the stitch length setting to obtain a fine stitch. Sew slowly, keeping the seams parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



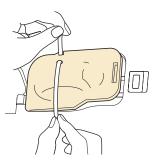
### Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a **Zigzag Stitch**)

- Remove the bobbin cover from the machine ("Setting the Bobbin" of "Basic operations").
- Thread the gimp thread through the hole in the cord guide bobbin cover from top to bottom. Position the thread in the notch at the back of the cord guide bobbin cover.

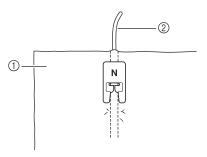


- ① Notch
- ② Gimp thread

- Snap the cord guide bobbin cover into place, making sure that the gimp thread can be fed freely.
  - Make sure there are no restrictions when feeding the thread.



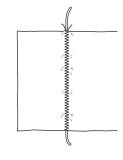
- Set the zigzag width from 2.0 mm 2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 inch - 3/32 inch).
- Attach presser foot "N".
- Position the fabric right side up on top of 6 the cord and place the cord to the rear of the machine under the presser foot.



① Fabric (right side)

② Gimp thread

Lower the presser foot and start sewing to make a decorative finish.



## **Elastic Zigzag Stitches**

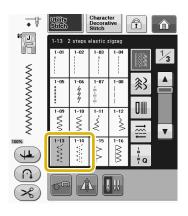
Use elastic zigzag stitches for tape attaching, overcasting, darning, or a wide variety of other uses.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

| Stitch                                                                | Stitch name            | Presser foot |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|
| 1-13<br><><br><><br><><br><>                                          | 2 steps elastic zigzag |              |
| 1-14<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>,<br>, | 3 steps elastic zigzag |              |



Select a stitch.

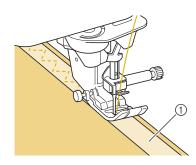




Attach presser foot "J".

### ■ Tape Attaching

Stretch the tape flat. While stretching the tape flat, sew the tape to the fabric.



① Tape

### Overcasting

Use this stitch to sew overcasting on the edge of stretch fabrics. Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



## Overcasting

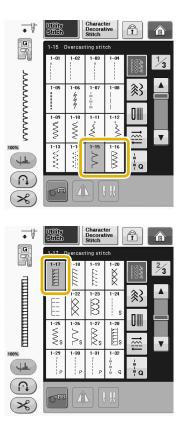
Use for the edge of seams in skirts or trousers, and the edge of all cuttings. Use presser foot "G", presser foot "J", or the optional side cutter attachment depending on the kind of overcasting stitch you select.

### ■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"

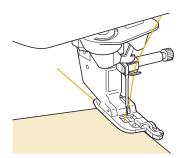
| Stitch | Stitch name        | Presser foot |
|--------|--------------------|--------------|
|        | Overcasting stitch | G            |
| 1-16   | Overcasting stitch | G            |
| 1-17   | Overcasting stitch | G            |



#### Select a stitch and attach presser foot "G".

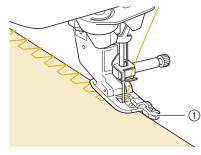


2 Lower the presser foot so that the presser foot guide is set flush against the edge of the fabric.





Sew along the presser foot guide.



① Guide

## **A** CAUTION

• After the stitch width is adjusted, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise). Check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may break and cause injury.



① The needle should not touch the center bar
If the presser foot is raised to its highest level, the needle may strike the presser foot.

### Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

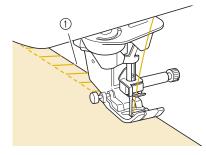
| Stitch | Stitch name             | Presser foot |
|--------|-------------------------|--------------|
| 1-18   | Overcasting stitch      |              |
| 1-19   | Overcasting stitch      |              |
| 1-20   | Overcasting stitch      |              |
|        | Overcasting stitch      |              |
| 1-22   | Single diamond overcast |              |
| 1-23   | Single diamond overcast |              |

Select a stitch and attach presser foot "J".

| •    | Utility<br>Stitch     |           | Charac<br>Decorat<br>Stitch | ter<br>tive | Î         |     |
|------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----|
| ie J | 1-18                  | Jvercas   | tina stit                   | ch          |           |     |
| 3    | 1 <sup>-1</sup> KAAAA | 1-18      | 1-19                        | 1-20        | THE NAME  | 2⁄3 |
|      | 1-21<br>E=            | 1-22      | 1-23                        | 1-24        | <u></u> } |     |
| F    | t:                    | $\bowtie$ | Ø                           | S           | ПШ        |     |
| F    | 5                     | ζ.        | R                           | 1-28        | U         |     |
| F    | ≷s                    | ≥s        | MN s                        | KKKK        |           | V   |
| 196  | 1-29                  | 1-30      | 1-31                        | 1-32        | -         |     |
| Ŧ    | P                     | P         | P                           | -=-=-=<br>Q | -=-Q      |     |



Sew with the needle dropping slightly off the edge of the fabric.



① Needle drop position

#### 🗸 Note

 Use the "L/R SHIFT" setting for fine tuning the placement of the stitch. Be sure to sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing.

## Quilting

You can make beautiful quilts quickly and easily with this machine. When making a quilt, you will find it convenient to use the knee lifter and foot controller to free your hands for other tasks ("Using the Foot Controller" on page S-4 and /or "Using the Knee Lifter" on page S-15). The 30 quilting stitches Q-01 through Q-30 and the utility stitches with "P" or "Q" indicated on their key are useful for quilting.

The "P" or "Q" at the bottom of the key display indicates that these stitches are intended for ("Q") quilting and ("P") piecing.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

|               | Stitch Stitch name          | Presser foot |            |  |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------|------------|--|
| Stitch        |                             | 69           | <u>5</u> 0 |  |
| <b>0-01</b>   | Piecing stitch (Middle)     |              | C O        |  |
| Q-02          | Piecing stitch (Right)      |              | Ó          |  |
| 0-03          | Piecing stitch (Left)       | ,<br>J       | °S         |  |
| Q-04          | Hand-look quilting (Middle) | i j          | or         |  |
| Q-05<br> <br> | Basting stitch<br>(Middle)  | i j          | Ś          |  |

|                            |                                     |        | Presser foot |  |  |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|--------------|--|--|
| Stitch                     | Stitch name                         | 67     | <u>o</u> n   |  |  |
| Q-06                       | Stem stitch                         |        | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-07                       | Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch     | i j    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-08                       | Zigzag stitch (Right)               | i j    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-09                       | Zigzag stitch (Left)                |        | Ś            |  |  |
| Q-10<br><<br><<br><        | 2 steps elastic zigzag              |        | Ś            |  |  |
| Q-11<br><>><br><><br><>    | 3 steps elastic zigzag              |        | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-12<br>111111 Q           | Quilting appliqué stitch            | i J    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-13<br> <br>              | Shell tuck edge                     | i J    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-14                       | Blanket stitch                      | i j    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-15                       | Quilting stippling                  |        | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-16                       | Overcasting stitch                  | #<br>F | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-17<br>/ / / /<br>/ / / / | Tape attaching                      | i j    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-18                       | Serpentine stitch                   |        | °<br>S       |  |  |
| Q-19                       | Feather stitch                      |        | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-20                       | Fagoting cross stitch               | i j    | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-21<br>/_^.v_^.           | Couching stitch                     |        | Ś            |  |  |
| Q-22                       | Patchwork double overlock<br>stitch |        | Ó            |  |  |
| Q-23                       | Smocking stitch                     | i j    | Ś            |  |  |

|                    |                                 | Presser foot |    |  |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|--------------|----|--|
| Stitch             | Stitch name                     | 60           | 00 |  |
| Q-24               | Rick-rack stitch                | i j          | Ó  |  |
| Q-25<br>MMM        | Decorative stitch               |              | Ó  |  |
| Q-26<br>XXX<br>XXX | Decorative stitch               |              | Ś  |  |
| Q-27<br>           | Hemstitching                    |              | Ś  |  |
| Q-28               | Hemstitching                    |              | Ś  |  |
| Q-29               | Single diamond<br>overcast      | i J          | Ś  |  |
| Q-30               | Overcasting stitch              | H J          | Ó  |  |
| 1-29<br> <br>  P   | Piecing stitch (Right)          | i j          | Ś  |  |
| 1-30               | Piecing stitch (Middle)         | it j         | C  |  |
| 1-31<br> <br>  P   | Piecing stitch (Left)           | i j          | °S |  |
| 1-32<br>           | Hand-look quilting              | i j          | Ó  |  |
| 1-33<br>≶<br>Q     | Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch | H J          | Ó  |  |
| 1-34<br>           | Quilting appliqué stitch        | i j          | Ó  |  |
| 1-35<br>೫೫<br>۲    | Quilting stippling              |              | Ś  |  |

### Memo

When a stitch pattern in the Quilting Stitches category (Q-02 through Q-30) is selected, a finer stitch width can be set than is available with stitch patterns in other categories.

For example: Stitch Q-03 has 57 needle positions and stitch Q-19 has 29 width selections.

### 🟒 Note

• The width range of stitch setting is only available in the Quilting stitch "Q" quilting category.

### Piecing

Sewing two pieces of fabric together is called piecing. When cutting pieces for quilt blocks, make sure the seam allowance is 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch).

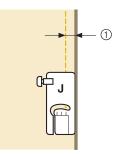
Select  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$  or  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$  and attach presser foot "1".

# Align the edge of the fabric with the edge of the presser foot, and start sewing.

\* To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance

along the right edge of the presser foot with

selected, the width should be set to 5.50 mm (approx. 7/32 inch).

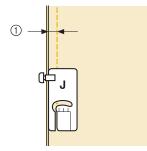


- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance

along the left edge of the presser foot with

Р

selected, the width should be set to 1.50 mm (approx. 1/32 inch).



- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- \* To change the needle position, use + or in the width display.



### Memo

- Using a straight stitch (middle needle position) makes it easier to sew smoothly (see page S-24).
- For models equipped with the guideline marker:

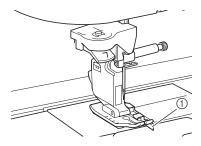
In the case Q-01(center, at width 3.5 mm) is selected, if the guideline marker is set at 10.0 mm (3.5 mm plus 6.5 mm, close to 1/4 inch), you can sew piecing with referring the guideline marker.

### Piecing Using the 1/4" Quilting Foot with Guide (optional with some models)

This quilting foot can sew an accurate 1/4 inch or 1/8 inch seam allowance.

It can be used for piecing together a quilt or for topstitching.

# Press , and then attach the 1/4" quilting foot with guide.

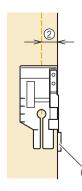


① Guide

# Use the guide and marks on the presser foot to sew accurate seam allowances.

### Piecing a 1/4 inch seam allowance

Sew keeping the edge of the fabrics against the guide.



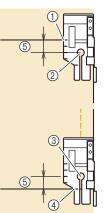
- ① Guide
- 2 1/4 inch

### 🏹 Memo

• For accurate fabric placement, refer to "Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin Cover (with Mark)" on page S-26.

#### Creating an accurate seam allowance

Use the mark on the foot to begin, end, or pivot 1/4 inch from edge of fabric.



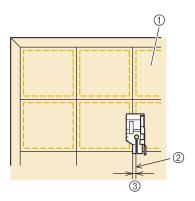
- ① Align this mark with edge of fabric to begin.
- ② Beginning of stitching
- ③ End of stitching
- Opposite edge of fabric to end or pivot
- ⑤ 1/4 inch

### 🏹 Memo

• For details on pivoting, refer to "Pivoting" on page S-15.

### Topstitching quilting, 1/8 inch

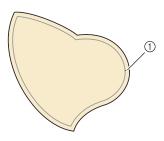
To topstitch 1/8" from a seam allowance, align the left edge of the narrow part of the foot with the seam allowance.



- ① Surface of fabric
- ② Seam
- ③ 1/8 inch

### Appliqué

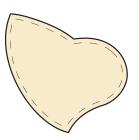
Trace the pattern onto the appliqué fabric and then cut around it, leaving a 3 mm to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 inch to 3/16 inch) seam allowance.



- (1) Seam allowance: 3 mm to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 inch to 3/16 inch)
- Place a piece of stabilizer cut to the finished size of the appliqué design onto the fabric, and then fold over the seam margin using an iron. Clip curves when necessary.



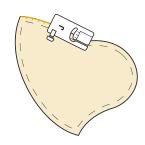
3 Turn the appliqué over, and attach the stabilizer with basting pins or a basting stitch.

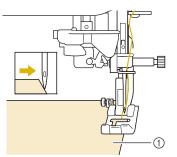


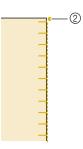


and attach presser foot "J".

5 Use the quilting appliqué stitch to attach the appliqué. Sew around the edge while dropping the needle as close to the edge as possible.



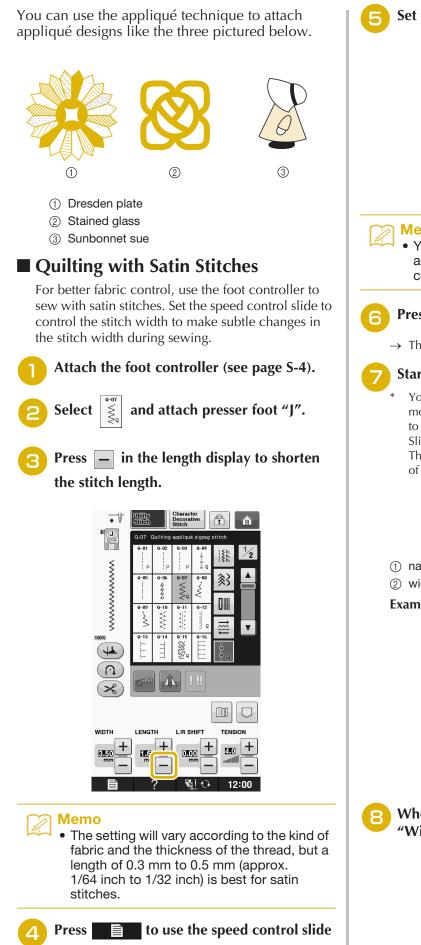




Appliqué
 Needle drop position

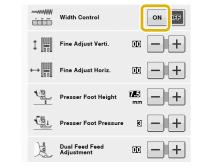
# **A** CAUTION

• Be careful that the needle does not strike a basting pin during sewing. Striking a pin can cause the needle to break, resulting in injury.



to control the stitch width.

Set the "Width Control" to "ON".



#### Memo

 You can use the speed control slide to adjust the stitch width. Use the foot controller to adjust the sewing speed.

Press CLOSE

 $\rightarrow$  The display will return to the original screen.

### Start sewing.

You can adjust the stitch width during sewing by moving the sewing speed controller. Slide the lever to the left, and the stitch width becomes narrower. Slide it to the right, the stitch width becomes wider. The size of the width changes equally on both sides of the middle needle position.

| 1 | - | <br>2 |
|---|---|-------|
|   |   |       |

- (1) narrower
- (2) wider

Example: Changing the width

When you are finished sewing, set the "Width Control" back to "OFF".

### Free Motion Quilting

With free motion quilting, the feed dogs can be

lowered by pressing  $\overline{\ }$ , so that the fabric can be

moved freely in any direction.

In this mode, the presser foot is raised to the necessary height for free motion sewing. We recommend attaching the foot controller and

sewing at a consistent speed. You can adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide on the machine.

# **A** CAUTION

• With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.

### Using free motion open toe quilting foot "O"

The free motion open toe quilting foot "O" is used for free motion quilting with zigzag or decorative stitches or for free motion quilting of straight stitches on fabric with an uneven thickness. Various stitches can be sewn using free motion open toe quilting foot "O". For details on the stitches that can be used, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.



Free motion open toe quilting foot "O"

Memo

• When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press

to display "Free Motion Foot

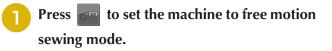
Height" of the settings screen. Press - or

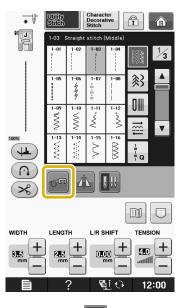
+ to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the

setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing very stretchy fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



• In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page S-12). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.



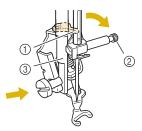


→ The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.

Select a stitch.

Remove the presser foot holder.

Attach free motion open toe quilting foot "O" by positioning the pin of the quilting foot above the needle clamp screw and aligning the lower-left of the quilting foot and the presser bar.



- ① pin
- Needle clamp screw
- ③ Presser bar

#### 🗤 Note

• Make sure that the quilting foot is not slanted.

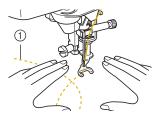
Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the disc-shaped screwdriver with your left hand.



① Presser foot holder screw

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.
- 5 Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0 mm - 2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 inch - 3/32 inch) in length.





- Press **on** to cancel the free motion sewing mode.
- → Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

#### 🏹 Memo

• Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

## Using free motion quilting foot "C" (optional with some models)

Use the free motion quilting foot "C" with straight stitch needle plate for free motion sewing.



Free motion quilting foot "C"

# **A** CAUTION

• When using free motion quilting foot "C", be sure to use the straight stitch needle plate and sew with the needle in middle (center) needle position. If the needle is moved to any position other than the middle (center) needle position, the needle may break, which may result in injuries.

#### 🏹 Memo

• When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press

to display "Free Motion Foot

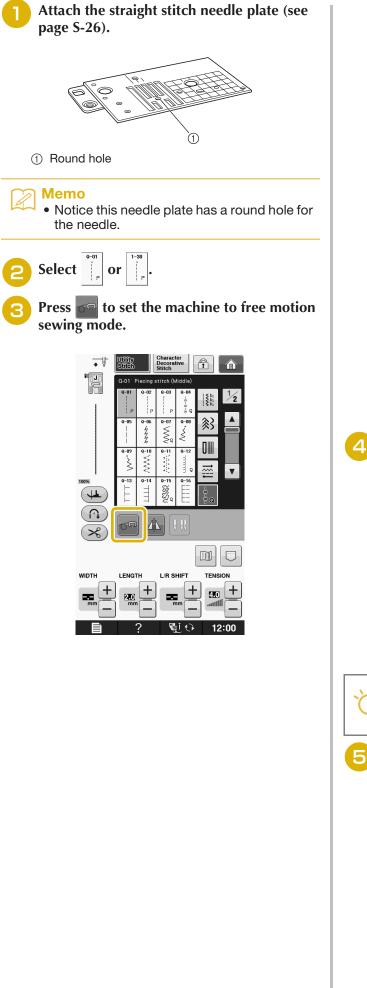
Height" of the settings screen. Press - or

+ to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the

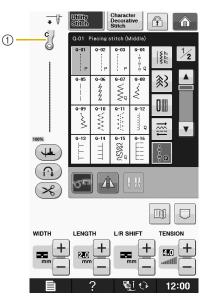
setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing very stretchy fabric, so that it is easier to sew.

|          | Pivoting<br>Height                |        |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--------|
| *        | Free Motion<br>Foot Height        | ····   |
| <u>.</u> | Automatic Fabric<br>Sensor System | ON OFF |

• In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension. Test with a sample piece of fabric that is similar to your chosen fabric.

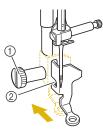


 $\rightarrow$  The key appears as  $\overline{00}$ , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.



- (1) Free motion quilting foot "C"
- $\rightarrow$  When stitch Q-01 or 1-30 is selected, free motion quilting foot "C" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen.
- 4

Attach free motion quilting foot "C" at the front with the presser foot holder screw aligned with the notch in the quilting foot.

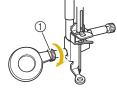


- ① Presser foot holder screw
- 2 Notch

#### Note

• Make sure that the quilting foot is attached properly and not slanted.

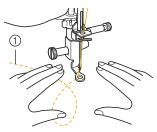
Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver with your left hand.



① Presser foot holder screw

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.
- **1** Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0 mm - 2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 inch - 3/32 inch) in length.



1 Stitch

# Press solution to cancel the free motion sewing mode.

- → Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.
- After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and presser foot "C", and reinstall the regular needle plate and the needle plate cover.

#### 🟒 Note

- Free motion open toe quilting foot "O" can also be used with the straight stitch needle plate. We recommend using free motion open toe quilting foot "O" with free motion sewing of fabrics of uneven thicknesses.
- When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.

#### ן Memo

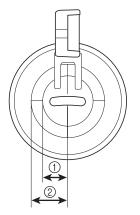
- Normally, the feed dogs are raised for regular sewing.
- Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

### Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E" (optional with some models)

Sewing quilting lines at equal distances around a motif is called echo quilting. The quilting lines, which appear as ripples echoing away from the motif, are the distinguishing characteristic of this quilting style. Use the free motion echo quilting foot "E" for echo quilting. Using the measurement on the presser foot as a guide, sew around the motif at a fixed interval. We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed.



Free motion echo quilting foot "E" measurement



- ① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ② 9.5 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

# **A** CAUTION

• With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.

#### 

• When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press

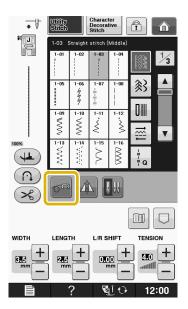
to display "Free Motion Foot Height" of the settings screen (see page S-15). Press — or + to change the height that the quilting foot is raised above the

fabric. Increase the setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing high loft fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



- In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page S-12). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.
- **1** Select

Press **F** to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.



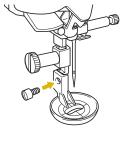
→ The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.

- 3 Attach the adapter. Refer to "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" of "Basic operations".
- 4 Attach the free motion echo quilting foot "E" on the left side of the adapter with the holes in the quilting foot and adapter aligned.





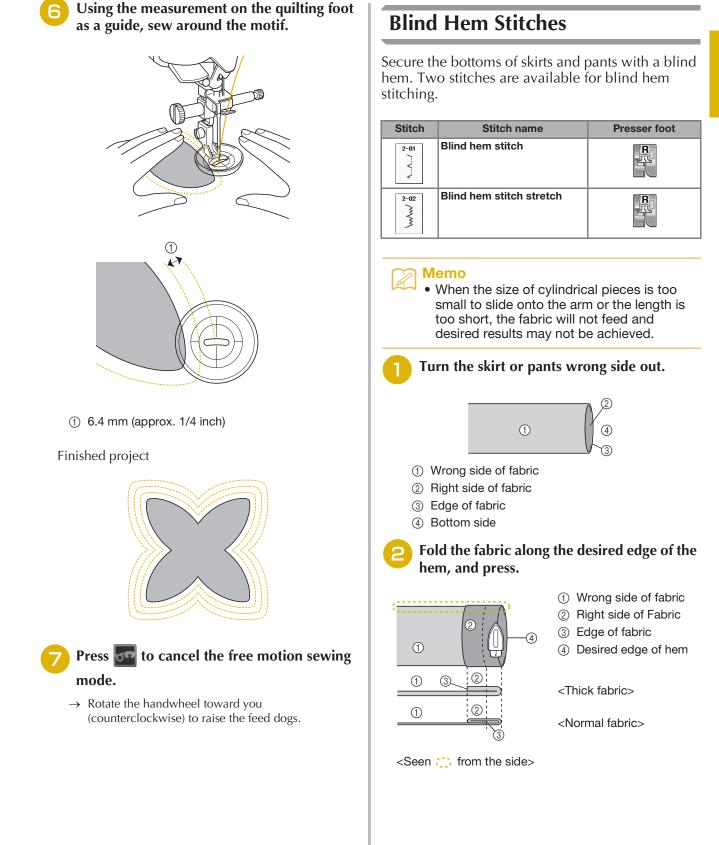
Tighten the screw with the included screwdriver.



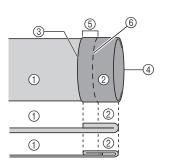


## **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.



### 3 Use a chalk to mark on the fabric about 5 mm (3/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric, and then baste it.



- Wrong side of fabric
   Right side of fabric
- 3 Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- (5) 5 mm (3/16 inch)
- 6 Basting

<Thick fabric>

#### <Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>

# Fold back the fabric inside along the basting.

- ① Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- (5) 5 mm (3/16 inch)
- 6 Basting
- ⑦ Basting point

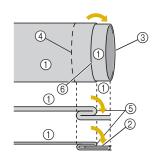
<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>



# Unfold the edge of fabric, and position the fabric with the wrong side facing up.



- Wrong side of fabric
   Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- (5) Basting point
- 6 Basting

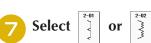
<Thick fabric>

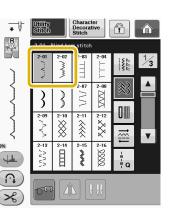
<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>



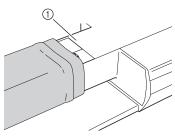






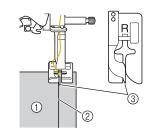


- Remove the flat bed attachment to use the free-arm.
- Slide the item that you wish to sew onto the free arm, make sure that the fabric feeds correctly, and then start sewing.





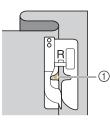
**10** Position the fabric with the edge of the folded hem against the guide of the presser foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.



- ① Wrong side of fabric
- ② Fold of hem
- ③ Guide

## D

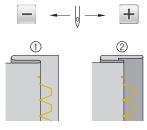
# Adjust the stitch width until the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



① Needle drop point

When you change the needle drop point, raise the needle, and then change the stitch width.

### <Stitch width>



- ① Thick fabric
- ② Normal fabric

### Memo

 Blind hem stitches cannot be sewn if the left needle drop point does not catch the fold. If the needle catches too much of the fold, the fabric cannot be unfolded and the seam appearing on the right side of the fabric will be very large, leaving an unattractive finish. If you experience either of these cases, follow the instructions below to solve the problem.

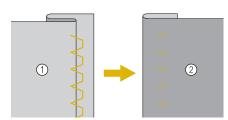
### If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold

The needle is too far to the left.

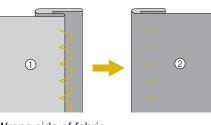
Press + to decrease the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



### <Thick fabric>



<Normal fabric>



① Wrong side of fabric

② Right side of fabric

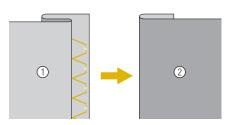
### ■ If the Needle does not Catch the Hem Fold

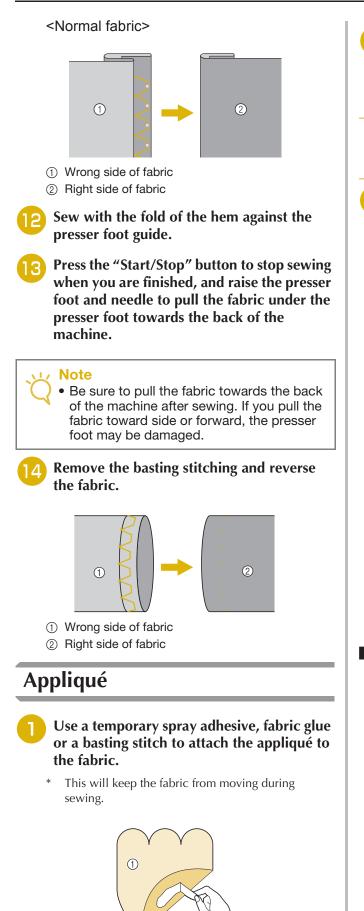
The needle is too far to the right.

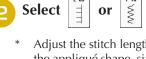
Press — to increase the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



<Thick fabric>





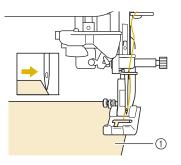


\* Adjust the stitch length and width to correspond to the appliqué shape, size, and quality of material (see page S-10).

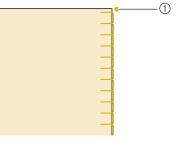
#### 🏹 Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.
- 3

Attach presser foot "J". Check that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the appliqué, then start sewing.



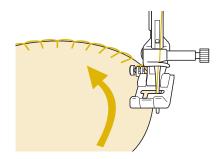
① Appliqué material



① Needle drop position

## Appliqué Sharp Curves

Stop the machine with the needle in the fabric outside the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric a little bit at a time while sewing for an attractive finish to the seam.

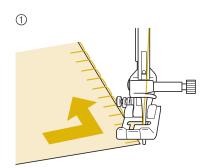


- Appliqué
- ② Fabric glue

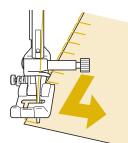
6

### Appliqué Corners

Stop the machine with the needle in the right position of the outside (or inside) corner of the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and pivot the fabric to align the fabric edge. Lower the presser foot and continue stitching.







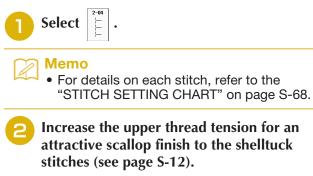
- ① Outside corner
- Inside corner

#### 🏹 Memo

 Placing a lightweight tear away stabilizer beneath the stitching area will improve the stitch placement along the edge of the appliqué fabric.

## Shelltuck Stitches

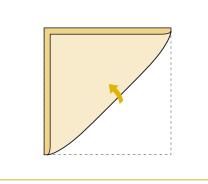
Shelltuck stitches give an attractive appearance of shells along the curve of a collar. This stitch pattern can be used for edging the neckline or sleeves of dresses and blouses.



Memo

• If the upper thread tension is too weak, the shelltuck stitches will not scallop.

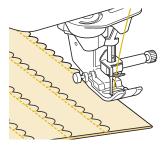
To make rows of shell tuck stitches, fold the fabric in half along the bias.

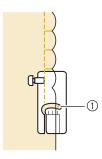


### Memo

Use a thin fabric.

Attach presser foot "J". Set the needle drop point slightly off the edge of the fabric, and start sewing.

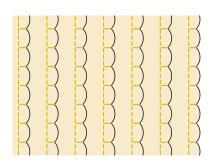




① Needle drop position



Unfold the fabric, and iron the tucks to one



### Memo

To make shell tucks at the edge of a collar or neckline, follow the pattern's instructions and then use this stitch to make a decorative finish on the collar or neckline.

## **Scallop Stitches**

This wave-shaped satin stitch is called the scallop stitch. Use this stitch to decorate the edges of blouse collars and handkerchiefs or use it as a hem accent.

### Memo

 A temporary spray adhesive may be necessary for lightweight fabrics. Test sew the fabric before sewing a project.

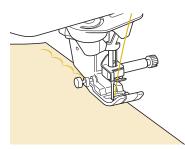


#### Memo

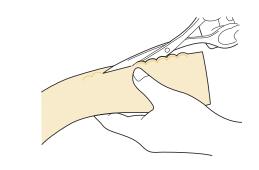
· For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.

Attach presser foot "N". Sew scallop stitches along the edge of the fabric.

Do not sew directly on the edge of the fabric.



Trim along the seam, making sure not to cut the stitches.



### Memo

Use a seam sealant to secure the edges of the scallop stitches.

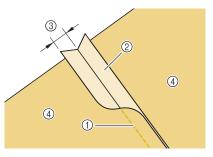
## **Crazy Quilting**

For a decorative look called "Crazy Quilting", the following stitches can be sewn on top of a pressed seam allowance.



Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "I".

With the right sides facing each other, sew two pieces of fabric together, and then press open the seam allowance.

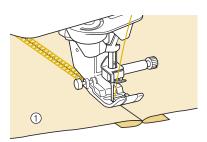


- ① Straight stitch
- ② Seam margins
- ③ 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- (4) Wrong side



Select a stitch for top stitching.

- 2-07 ////
- 4 Place the fabric right side up in the machine, and center the presser foot over the seam when sewing.

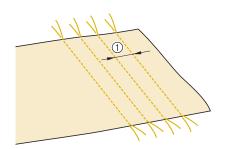


① Right side of fabric

## **Smocking Stitches**

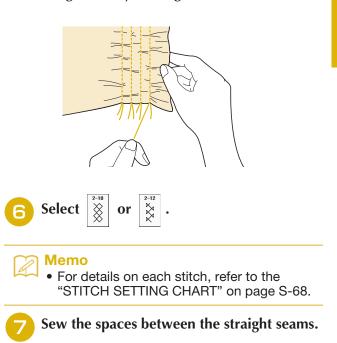
Use smocking stitches for decorative sewing on clothes, etc.

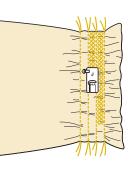
- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".
- 2 Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and loosen the upper thread tension to approximately 2.0 (see "Setting the Stitch Length" on page S-11 and "Setting the Thread Tension" on page S-12).
- Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).
- Sew the seams, leaving approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) between the seams, then trim excess thread, leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).



① Approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

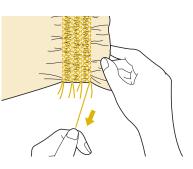
5 Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, and then smooth the gathers by ironing them.







Pull out the straight stitch threads.

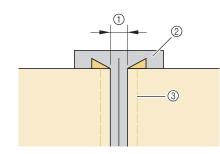


## Fagoting

When there is a space between two fabrics with thread sewn over the space to join the fabrics together, it is called fagoting. Use this stitch when sewing blouses or children's clothes.

Baste two pieces of fabric onto thin paper, leaving a space of 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) between the fabrics.

\* If you draw a line down the middle of the thin paper or water-soluble stabilizer, sewing is easier.



- ① 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
- ② Paper
- ③ Basting stitches

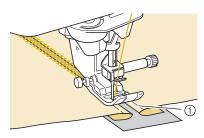
| $ \begin{array}{c} \textbf{2}  \textbf{Select}  \overset{\tiny 2-11}{\swarrow}  \textbf{or}  \overset{\tiny 2-12}{\swarrow}  \textbf{a} \\ \overset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{\rightthreetimes}  \overset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{\rightthreetimes}  \textbf{a} \\ \overset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{\rightthreetimes}  \overset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{ $}  \overset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{$}  \underset{\scriptstyle 2-12}{$ | 2 | Select | 2-11 | or | 2-12 | • |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------|------|----|------|---|--|
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------|------|----|------|---|--|

#### 🏹 Memo

 For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.

Attach presser foot "J". Align the center of

the presser foot with the middle of the space between the fabrics and begin sewing.



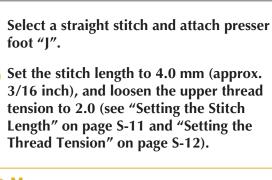
#### Basting stitches

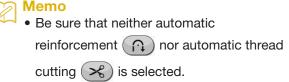
### Memo

Use a thick thread.

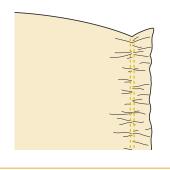


## Tape or Elastic Attaching



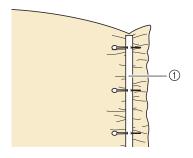


3 Sew two rows of straight stitches on the right side of the fabric, then pull the bobbin thread to create the necessary gather.



### Memo

- Before sewing the straight stitch, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and pull up the bobbin thread. Holding the top and bobbin thread, pull a length of thread out from the rear of the machine. (Be sure that the presser foot is raised.)
- Place the tape over the gather, and hold it in place with basting pins.



① Tape

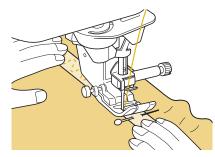


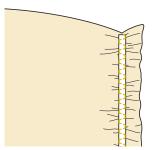
#### Memo

 For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.



### Sew over the tape (or elastic).

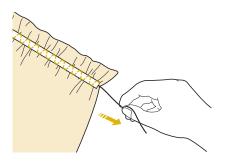




# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.
- 7

Pull out the straight stitch threads.



### Heirloom

### ■ Hemstitching (1)

Use for sewing tablecloths, decorative hems, and decorative stitching on shirt fronts.

### Memo

• Use a light to medium weight homespun fabric with a little stiffness.

# Insert a type 130/705H, size 100/16 Wing needle.

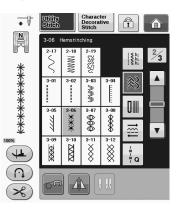
\* This specialty sewing needle is not furnished with your machine. Must be purchased separately.

# **CAUTION**

- The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Thread the wing needle by hand, from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.
- A more attractive finish can be obtained if you use a "130/705H Wing" needle when sewing these patterns. If using a wing needle and the stitch width has been set manually, check that the needle will not touch the presser foot by carefully rotating the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before starting to sew.

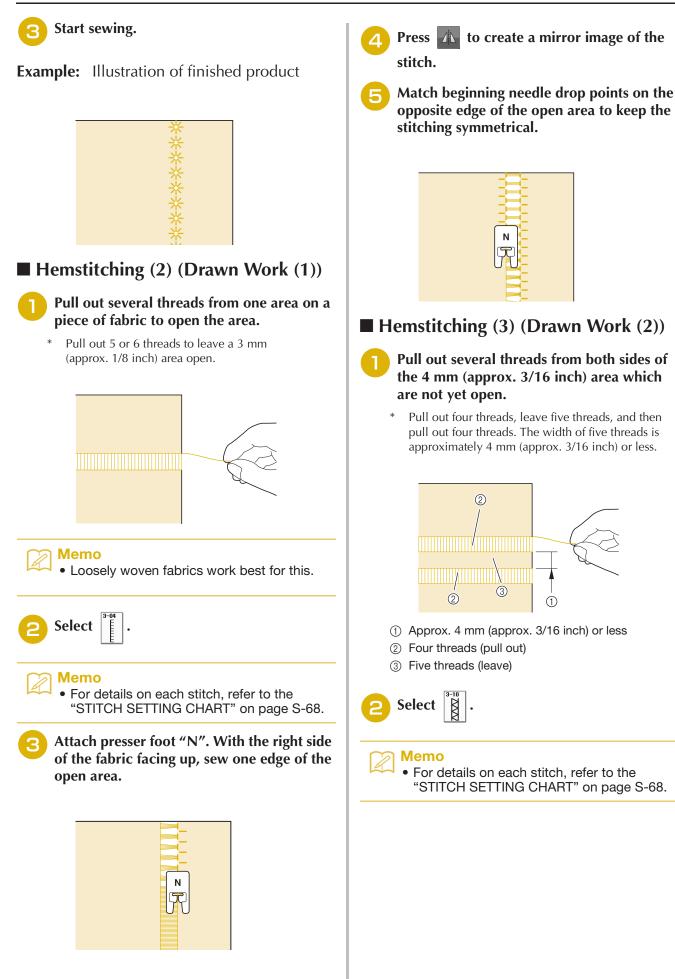
### Select a stitch and attach presser foot "N".

Select any stitch between 3-01 and 3-22.



### 🏹 Memo

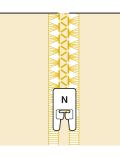
For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.



1



Sew the decorative stitch in the center of the five threads created above.



🦙 Memo

• A wing needle can be used for Hemstitching (3).

## **One-step Buttonholes**

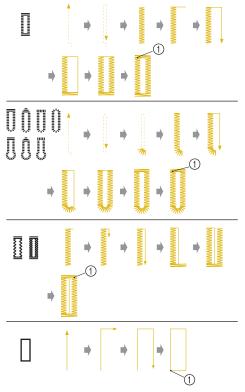
With one-step buttonholes, you can make buttonholes appropriate to the size of your button.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

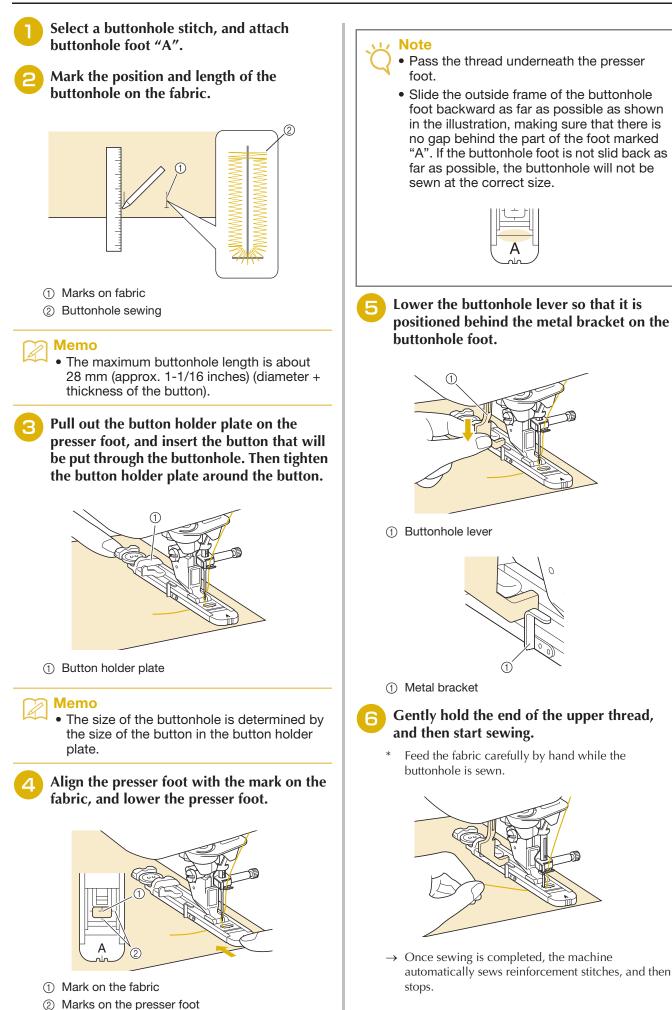
| Stitch            | Stitch name                       | Presser foot |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 4-01<br>U         | Narrow rounded buttonhole         |              |
| 4-02<br>U         | Wide round ended<br>buttonhole    |              |
| 4-03<br><b>()</b> | Tapered round ended<br>buttonhole |              |
| 4-04<br>U         | Round ended buttonhole            |              |
| 4-05<br><b>D</b>  | Round ended buttonhole            |              |
| 4-06              | Round double ended<br>buttonhole  |              |
| 4-07              | Narrow squared buttonhole         |              |
| 4-08              | Wide squared buttonhole           |              |
| 4-09              | Stretch buttonhole                |              |
| 4-10              | Heirloom buttonhole               |              |
|                   | -                                 |              |

| Stitch               | Stitch name                | Presser foot |
|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| 4-11                 | Bound buttonhole           |              |
| <sup>4-12</sup><br>Д | Keyhole buttonhole         |              |
| 4-13<br><b>()</b>    | Tapered keyhole buttonhole |              |
| 4-14<br><b>[</b>     | Keyhole buttonhole         |              |

One-step buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitching

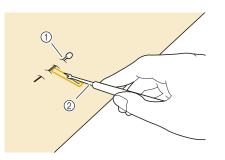


~~~~~

### memo

• If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, and then insert the seam ripper into the center of the buttonhole and cut towards the pin.



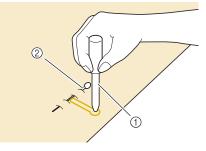
- ① Basting pin
- ② Seam ripper

# **A** CAUTION

• When using the seam ripper to open the buttonhole, do not put your hand or finger in the path of the ripper. The ripper may slip and cause injury. Do not use the seam ripper in any other way than how it is intended.

### n Memo

• For keyhole buttonholes, use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the rounded end of the buttonhole. Then insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, insert a seam ripper into the hole made with the eyelet punch, and cut towards the pin.



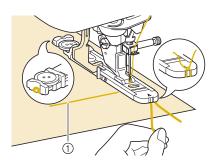
- ① Eyelet punch
- ② Basting pin

## Sewing Stretch Fabrics

When sewing on stretch fabric with

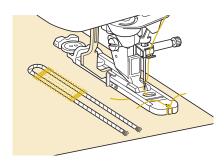
sew the buttonhole stitches over a gimp thread.

Hook the gimp thread onto the back of presser foot "A". Insert the ends into the grooves at the front of the presser foot, and then temporarily tie them there.



① Upper thread

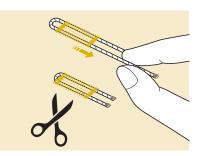
Lower the presser foot and start sewing.



### 🏹 Memo

• Adjust the stitch width to the thickness of the gimp thread.

Once sewing is completed, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack, and trim off any excess.



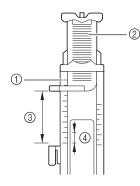
### 🦙 Memo

• After using the seam ripper to cut open the threads over the buttonhole, trim off the threads.

### Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button Holder Plate

Use the markings on the presser foot scale to set the size of the buttonhole. One mark on the presser foot scale equals 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).

Add the button diameter and thickness together, and then set the plate at the calculated value.



- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Button holder plate
- ③ Completed measurement of diameter + thickness
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

### 🏹 Memo

• For example, for a button with a diameter of 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch), the scale should be set at 25 mm (approx. 1 inch).



- ① 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- ② 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch)

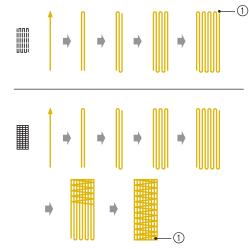
## Darning

Use darning stitches for mending and other applications.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

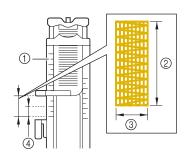
| Stitch | Stitch name | Presser foot |
|--------|-------------|--------------|
| 4-15   | Darning     |              |
| 4-16   | Darning     |              |

Darning is performed by sewing from the front of the presser foot to the back as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitches

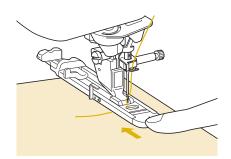
- Select a stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".
- Set the scale to the desired length of the darning.



- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ Width 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

#### 🏹 Memo

 The maximum length for darning is 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Check that the needle drops at the desired position and lower the presser foot, making sure the upper thread passes underneath the buttonhole foot.



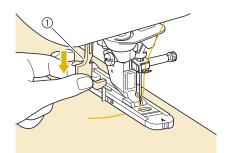
### Note

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Set the presser foot so that there is no gap behind the section marked with an "A" (the shaded area in the illustration below). If there is a gap, the size of the darning will not be correct.

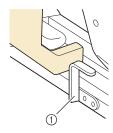




Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.

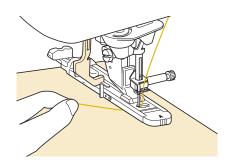


① Buttonhole lever



Metal bracket

**5** Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to start the machine.



→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

### 🔊 Memo

 If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

### Bar Tacks

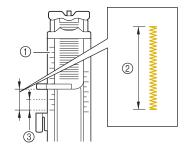
Use bar tacks to reinforce areas that will be subject to strain, such as pocket corners.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

| Stitch          | Stitch name | Presser foot |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|
| 4-17<br>Million | Bar tack    |              |



Attach buttonhole foot "A" and set the scale to the length of the bar tack you wish to sew.



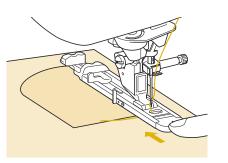
- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

### 🏹 Memo

• Bar tacks can be between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Bar tacks are usually between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch).



## Set the fabric so that the pocket moves toward you during sewing.

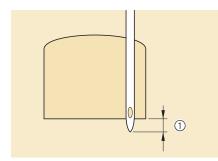


#### Note

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the bar tack will not be sewn to the correct size.

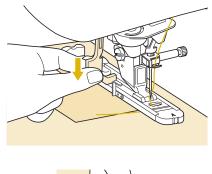


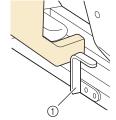
Check the first needle drop point and lower the presser foot.



① 2 mm (approx. 1/16 inch)

**5** Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.

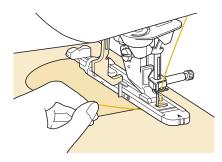




① Metal bracket



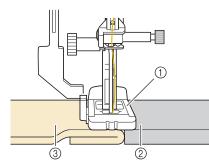
Gently hold the end of the upper thread and begin sewing.



→ When sewing is completed, the machine will sew reinforcement stitches and stop automatically.

### Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics

Place a piece of folded fabric or cardboard beside the fabric being sewn to level the buttonhole foot and allow for easier and even feeding.



- Presser foot
- ② Thick paper
- ③ Fabric

### 🏹 Memo

 If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

## **Button Sewing**

Buttons with 2 or 4 holes can be attached, using the machine.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

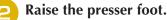
| Stitch    | Stitch name   | Presser foot |
|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| 4-18<br>© | Button sewing |              |

#### 🗤 Note

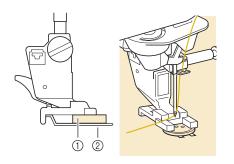
• Do not use the automatic thread cutting function when sewing buttons. Otherwise, you will lose the thread ends.



 $\rightarrow$  The feed dogs are lowered automatically.



3 Attach button sewing foot "M", slide the button along the metal plate and into the presser foot, and lower the presser foot.



① Button

② Metal plate

#### Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle goes into each hole correctly.

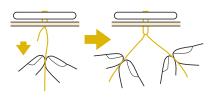
- \* If the needle does not reach the holes on the left side, adjust the stitch width.
- To attach the button more securely, repeat the process.

# Gently hold the end of the upper thread and start sewing.

→ The machine stops automatically when sewing is finished.

## **CAUTION**

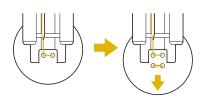
- Make sure the needle does not strike the button during sewing. The needle may break and cause injury.
- **6** From the wrong side of the fabric, pull the end of the bobbin thread to pull the upper thread through to the wrong side of the fabric. Tie the two thread ends together and cut the threads.



After the button is attached, select another stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

### Attaching 4 Hole Buttons

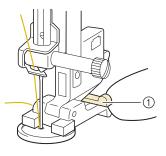
Sew the two holes closest to you. Then raise the presser foot and move the fabric so that the needle goes into the next two holes, and sew them in the same way.



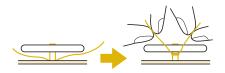
### Attaching a Shank to the Button



Pull the shank lever toward you before sewing.



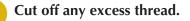
- ① Shank lever
- Pull the two ends of the upper thread between the button and the fabric, wind them around the shank, and then tie them firmly together.



Tie the ends of the bobbin thread from the beginning and end of sewing together on the wrong side of the fabric.

### 🗸 Note

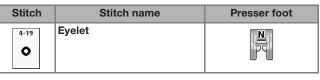
• When sewing is completed, be sure to select the other stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.



## **Eyelet**

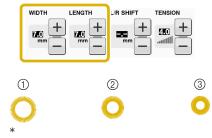
Use this stitch for making belt holes and other similar applications.

See page S-68 for the detailed information of stitches.

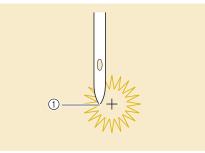




Use - or + in either the stitch width display or the stitch length display to choose the size of the eyelet.



- \* Actual size
- ① Large 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ② Medium 6 mm (approx. 15/64 inch)
- ③ Small 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
- Attach monogramming foot "N", then rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check the needle drop position.

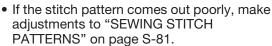


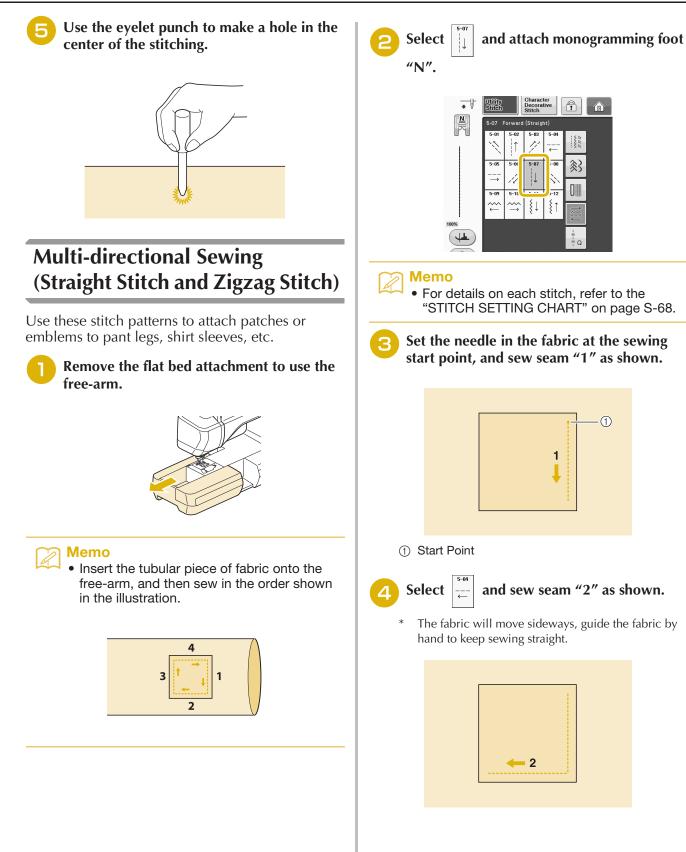
① Needle drop position

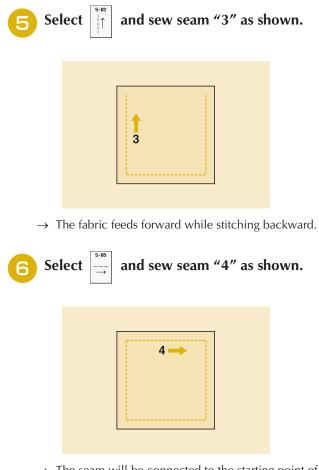
### Lower the presser foot and start sewing.

→ When sewing is finished, the machine sews reinforcement stitches and stops automatically.

#### 🗸 Note







→ The seam will be connected to the starting point of seam 1.

## **Zipper Insertion**

### Centered Zipper

Use for bags and other such applications.



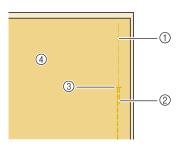
### ן Memo

• For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page S-68.

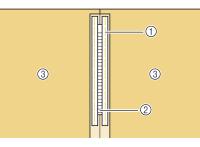
#### Note

• Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.

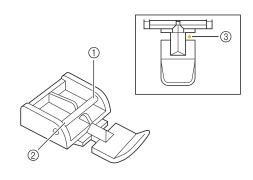
Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch (see page S-28) and sew to the top of the fabric.



- ① Basting stitches
- ② Reverse stitches
- ③ End of zipper opening
- ④ Wrong side
- Press the seam allowance open and attach the zipper with a basting stitch in the middle of each side of the zipper tape.



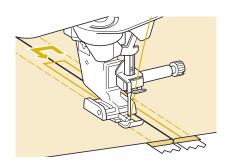
- ① Basting stitches
- Zipper
- ③ Wrong side
- 4 Remove presser foot "J". Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the zipper foot.



- ① Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position

# **A** CAUTION

- When using zipper foot "1", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Topstitch 7 mm to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch) from the seamed edge of the fabric, then remove the basting.



# **A** CAUTION

• Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

### Inserting a Side Zipper

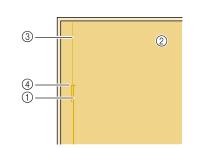
Use for side zippers in skirts or dresses.

Select

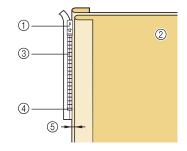
### Note

• Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.

Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch and sew to the top of the fabric.



- ① Reverse stitches
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Basting stitches
- ④ End of zipper opening
- Press the seam allowance open and align the folded hem along the teeth of the zipper, while maintaining 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) of sewing space.

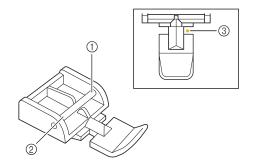


- ① Zipper pull tab
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Zipper teeth
- ④ End of zipper opening
- (5) 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)



Remove presser foot "J".

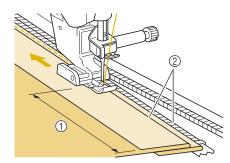
Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the presser foot.



- 1 Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position

# **A** CAUTION

- When using zipper foot "1", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Set the presser foot in the 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) margin.
- Starting from the end of the zipper opening, sew to a point about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, then stop the machine.
- Pull down the zipper slider, then continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.

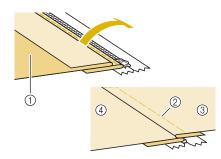


- ① 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)
- ② 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

# **A** CAUTION

• Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

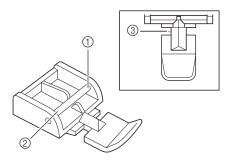
9 Close the zipper, turn the fabric over, and sew a basting stitch.



- ① Front of the skirt (wrong side of fabric)
- ② Basting stitches
- ③ Front of the skirt (right side of fabric)
- ④ Back of the skirt (right side of fabric)

# 10 Remove the presser foot, and reattach it so that the left side of the pin is attached to the presser foot holder.

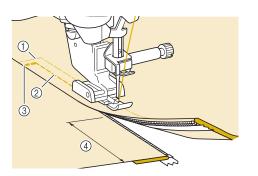
 When sewing the left side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the right side of the presser foot.
 When sewing the right side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the left side of the presser foot.



- ① Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position
- Set the fabric so that the left edge of the presser foot touches the edge of the zipper teeth.
- Sew reverse stitches at the top of the zipper, then continue sewing.
- 3 Stop sewing about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, leave the needle in the fabric, and remove the basting stitches.



# Open the zipper and sew the rest of the seam.



- ① Basting stitches
- ② 7 mm to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch)
- ③ Reverse stitches
- ④ 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)

## STITCH SETTING CHART

The following chart shows information for each utility stitch concerning applications, stitch lengths, stitch widths, and whether or not the twin needle mode can be used.

| Stitch                             | Stitch name                 | Press  | er foot    | Applications                                                                  |               | ch width<br>n (inch)]      |               | ch length<br>n (inch)]       | Twin        |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| outen                              | outen name                  | 60     | <u>J</u> L | Applications                                                                  | Auto.         | Manual                     | Auto.         | Manual                       | needle      |
| 1-01<br>  <br>                     | Straight stitch<br>(Left)   | i J    | Ś          | General sewing, gather,<br>pintuck, etc.                                      | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-02                               | Straight stitch<br>(Left)   | #<br>F | Ś          | General sewing, gather,<br>pintuck, etc.                                      | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-03<br>  <br> <br> <br> <br>      | Straight stitch<br>(Middle) | i j    | Ś          | General sewing, gather,<br>pintuck, etc.                                      | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-04                               | Straight stitch<br>(Middle) | i j    | Ś          | General sewing, gather,<br>pintuck, etc.                                      | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-05<br>  <br>  <br>  <br>         | Triple stretch<br>stitch    | #IJ    | Ś          | General sewing for<br>reinforcement and decorative<br>topstitching            | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-06<br>4<br>4<br>4<br>4           | Stem stitch                 | #IJ    | Ś          | Reinforced stitching, sewing<br>and decorative applications                   | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-07<br> <br>   <br>   <br>   <br> | Decorative<br>stitch        | N      | Ś          | Decorative stitching, top<br>stitching                                        | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-08<br> <br> <br>                 | Basting stitch              | H J    | Ś          | Basting                                                                       | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 20<br>(3/4)   | 5 - 30<br>(3/16 -<br>1-3/16) | NO          |
| 1-09                               | Zigzag stitch               |        | Ś          | For overcasting, mending.                                                     | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 5.0<br>(0 - 3/16)      | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-10<br>\$                         | Zigzag stitch               | #IJ    | Ś          | For overcasting, mending.                                                     | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 5.0<br>(0 - 3/16)      | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-11<br>                           | Zigzag stitch<br>(Right)    | i fj   | Ś          | Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.                         | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.3 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-12<br>>                          | Zigzag stitch<br>(Left)     | H J    | Ś          | Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.                         | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.3 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-13<br><``<br><`<br><`<br><`      | 2 steps elastic<br>zigzag   | H J    | Ś          | Overcasting (medium weight<br>and stretch fabrics), tape and<br>elastic       | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-14<br><;;<br><;;<br><;;          | 3 steps elastic<br>zigzag   | H J    | Ś          | Overcasting (medium,<br>heavyweight and stretch<br>fabrics), tape and elastic | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | ОК<br>( J ) |
|                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch       |        | G          | Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics                                | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)   | NO          |

| Stitch                                  | Stitch name                           | Press    | er foot | Applications                                                                                 |                | h width<br>n (inch)]       |               | ch length<br>n (inch)]     | Twin        |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| outon                                   | Outen name                            | 60       | 50      | Applications                                                                                 | Auto.          | Manual                     | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle      |
| 1-16                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 |          | G       | Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric                                                            | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-17                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 |          | G       | Reinforcing of medium,<br>heavyweight and easily friable<br>fabrics or decorative stitching. | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-18                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | i j      | Ś       | Reinforced seaming of stretch<br>fabric                                                      | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-19                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | i j      | Ś       | Reinforcing of medium stretch<br>fabric and heavyweight fabric,<br>decorative stitching      | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>(J)   |
| 1-20                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | Ĩ        | Ś       | Reinforcement of stretch<br>fabric or decorative stitching                                   | 4.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
|                                         | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | Ĩ        | Ś       | Stretch knit seam                                                                            | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
|                                         | Single diamond<br>overcast            |          | Ś       | Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric                                                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
|                                         | Single diamond overcast               |          | Ś       | Reinforcement of stretch fabric                                                              | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.8<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-24<br> <br> <br>  S                   | With side cutter                      |          | S       | Straight stitch while cutting fabrics                                                        | 0.0<br>(0)     | 0.0 - 2.5<br>(0 - 3/32)    | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-25<br>\$<br>\$                        | With side cutter                      |          | S       | Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics                                                          | 3.5<br>(1/8)   | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 5.0<br>(0 - 3/16)    | NO          |
| 1-26<br>>                               | With side cutter                      |          | S       | Overcasting stitch while<br>cutting fabrics                                                  | 3.5<br>(1/8)   | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-27<br>\$                              | With side cutter                      |          | S       | Overcasting stitch while<br>cutting fabrics                                                  | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-28                                    | With side cutter                      |          | S       | Overcasting stitch while<br>cutting fabrics                                                  | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-29                                    | Piecing stitch<br>(Right)             | Ĩ        | Ś       | Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm<br>(approx. 1/4 inch) left seam<br>allowance                      | 5.5<br>(7/32)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-30<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>; | Piecing stitch<br>(Middle)            |          | C       | Piecework/patchwork                                                                          | _              | -                          | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-31<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>;<br>;           | Piecing stitch<br>(Left)              | i J      | Ś       | Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm<br>(approx. 1/4 inch) left seam<br>allowance                      | 1.5<br>(1/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-32<br>                                | Hand-look<br>quilting                 | i J      | Ś       | Quilting stitch made to look<br>like hand quilting stitch                                    | 0.0<br>(0)     | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-33<br>                                | Quilting<br>appliqué zigzag<br>stitch | ۴J)<br>F | Ś       | Zigzag stitch for quilting and<br>sewing on appliqué quilt<br>pieces                         | 3.5<br>(1/8)   | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 5.0<br>(0 - 3/16)    | NO          |

| Stitch                                         | Stitch name                            | Press    | er foot    | Applications                                                   |               | h width<br>(inch)]     |               | ch length<br>n (inch)]     | Twin        |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| outon                                          | outen name                             | 60       | <u>0</u> 0 |                                                                | Auto.         | Manual                 | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle      |
| 1-34<br>                                       | Quilting<br>appliqué stitch            | i J      | Ś          | Quilting stitch for invisible<br>appliqué or attaching binding | 1.5<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.8<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-35<br>දිදි<br>ද                              | Quilting<br>stippling                  | i j      | Ś          | Background quilting                                            | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-01                                           | Blind hem stitch                       | 8 N      | R          | Hemming woven fabrics                                          | 00            | 3← - →3                | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-02                                           | Blind hem stitch<br>stretch            | 8 N      | R          | Hemming stretch fabric                                         | 00            | 3← - →3                | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-03                                           | Blanket stitch                         | i j      | Ś          | Appliqués, decorative blanket<br>stitch                        | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-04<br>                                       | Shell tuck edge                        | i j      | Ś          | Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics                              | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3                                              | Satin scallop<br>stitch                |          | Ś          | Decorating collar of blouse,<br>edge of handkerchief           | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.1 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-06<br>,00000000000000000000000000000000000   | Scallop stitch                         |          | Ś          | Decorating collar of blouse,<br>edge of handkerchief           | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-07                                           | Patchwork join<br>stitch               |          | Ś          | Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching                       | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.2<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 2-08                                           | Patchwork<br>double overlock<br>stitch | i j      | Ś          | Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching                       | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-09<br>/_^y^.                                 | Couching stitch                        |          | Ś          | Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching              | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.2<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-10                                           | Smocking stitch                        |          | Ś          | Smocking, decorative stitching                                 | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-11                                           | Feather stitch                         |          | Ś          | Fagoting, decorative stitching                                 | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-12<br>×<br>×<br>×                            | Fagoting cross<br>stitch               | ₩J]      | Ś          | Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching                    | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-13<br>-><br>-><br>-><br>-><br>-><br>-><br>-> | Tape attaching                         | ₩J]      | Ś          | Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric                       | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-14                                           | Ladder stitch                          | ۴IJ<br>F | Ś          | Decorative stitching                                           | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-15                                           | Rick-rack stitch                       | ₩J)      | Ś          | Decorative top stitching                                       | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-16<br>2000                                   | Decorative<br>stitch                   | #J]      | Ś          | Decorative stitching                                           | 5.5<br>(7/32) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |

| Stitch           | Stitch name                    | Press | er foot    | Applications                                  |                | h width<br>(inch)]     |               | ch length<br>n (inch)]     | Twin        |
|------------------|--------------------------------|-------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| outon            |                                | 60    | <u>o</u> n | Applications                                  | Auto.          | Manual                 | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle      |
| \$               | Serpentine<br>stitch           | R     | Ś          | Decorative stitching and attaching elastic    | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-18<br>MMM      | Decorative<br>stitch           |       | Ś          | Decorative stitching and appliqué             | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-19<br>2%\$\$\$ | Decorative<br>stippling stitch |       | Ś          | Decorative stitching                          | 7.0<br>(1/4)   | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-01<br>         | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, triple<br>straight at left   | 1.0<br>(1/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-02             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, triple<br>straight at center | 3.5<br>(1/8)   | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-03             | Hemstitching<br>zigzag         |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, top stitching                | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-04<br>E        | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, lace<br>attaching pin stitch | 3.5<br>(1/8)   | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-05             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Decorative hems                               | 3.0<br>(1/8)   | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-06<br>**<br>** | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Decorative hems daisy stitch                  | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-07<br>♦<br>●   | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-08             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-09             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-10             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-11<br>×        | Hemstitching                   | Ř     | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 4.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-12             | Honeycomb<br>stitch            |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-13             | Honeycomb<br>stitch            | Ř     | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-14<br>××<br>×× | Hemstitching                   | P     | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-15             | Hemstitching                   |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |

| Stitch               | Stitch name                          | Press | er foot    | Applications                                                  |                | h width<br>n (inch)]       |               | ch length<br>n (inch)]     | Twin      |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| outon                |                                      | 60    | <u>o</u> u | Applications                                                  | Auto.          | Manual                     | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle    |
| 3-16<br>×<br>×       | Hemstitching                         | R     | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј) |
| 3-17<br>+<br>+       | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 4.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO        |
| 3-18                 | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј) |
| 3-19                 | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Decorative hems and bridging stitch                           | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј) |
| 3-20                 | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon                   | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј) |
| 3-21<br>22<br>4      | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, smocking                                     | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO        |
| 3-22<br>7<br>47<br>4 | Hemstitching                         |       | Ś          | Decorative hems, smocking                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO        |
| 4-01<br>0            | Narrow rounded<br>buttonhole         |       | A          | Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics                  | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-02<br>U            | Wide round<br>ended<br>buttonhole    |       |            | Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons               | 5.5<br>(7/32)  | 3.5 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-03<br><b>()</b>    | Tapered round<br>ended<br>buttonhole |       |            | Reinforced waist tapered<br>buttonholes                       | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-04<br>0            | Round ended<br>buttonhole            |       |            | Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-05<br>U            | Round ended<br>buttonhole            |       |            | Buttonholes with bar tack                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-06<br>0            | Round double<br>ended<br>buttonhole  |       |            | Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics           | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-07                 | Narrow squared<br>buttonhole         |       |            | Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics                | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-08                 | Wide squared<br>buttonhole           |       |            | Buttonholes with extra space<br>for larger decorative buttons | 5.5<br>(7/32)  | 3.5 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-09                 | Stretch<br>buttonhole                |       |            | Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics                      | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.5 - 2.0<br>(1/32 - 1/16) | NO        |
| 4-10                 | Heirloom<br>buttonhole               |       | A          | Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics                  | 6.0<br>(15/64) | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64) | 1.5<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/16 - 1/8)  | NO        |
| 4-11                 | Bound<br>buttonhole                  |       |            | The first step in making bound buttonholes                    | 5.0<br>(3/16)  | 0.0 - 6.0<br>(0 - 15/64)   | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO        |

| Stitch                  | Stitch name                         | Presse  | er foot    | Applications                                                                               |               | h width<br>n (inch)]               |               | h length<br>n (inch)]              | Twin   |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|--------|
| outon                   | Outon name                          | 60      | 0 <b>n</b> | Applications                                                                               | Auto.         | Manual                             | Auto.         | Manual                             | needle |
| 4-12<br>[]              | Keyhole<br>buttonhole               |         | A          | Buttonholes in heavyweight or<br>thick fabrics for larger flat<br>buttons                  | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)           | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-13<br><b>()</b>       | Tapered keyhole<br>buttonhole       |         |            | Buttonholes in medium to<br>heavy weight fabrics for larger<br>flat buttons                | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)           | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| а-14<br>[]              | Keyhole<br>buttonhole               |         |            | Buttonholes with vertical bar<br>tack for reinforcement in<br>heavyweight or thick fabrics | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)           | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4–15<br>innn            | Darning                             |         | A          | Darning of medium weight fabric                                                            | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)          | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 2.5<br>(1/64 - 3/32)         | NO     |
| 4-16                    | Darning                             |         |            | Darning of heavyweight fabric                                                              | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)          | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 2.5<br>(1/64 - 3/32)         | NO     |
| 4-17                    | Bar tack                            |         |            | Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.                                                   | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/16 - 1/8)          | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-18<br>()              | Button sewing                       | M:<br>J |            | Attaching buttons                                                                          | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 4.5<br>(3/32 - 3/16)         | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 4-19<br>O               | Eyelet                              |         | Ś          | For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.                                                   | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 7.0 6.0 5.0<br>(1/4 15/64<br>3/16) | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 7.0 6.0 5.0<br>(1/4 15/64<br>3/16) | NO     |
| 5-01                    | Diagonally left<br>up (Straight)    |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners                    | _             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-02<br> <br> <br> <br> | Reverse<br>(Straight)               |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners                    | _             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-03                    | Diagonally right<br>up (Straight)   |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners                    | _             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-04<br><br><           | Sideways to left<br>(Straight)      |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric                                         | -             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-05<br><br>→           | Sideways to<br>right (Straight)     |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric                                         | -             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-06                    | Diagonally left<br>down (Straight)  |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners                    | _             | -                                  | _             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-07<br> <br> <br> <br> | Forward<br>(Straight)               |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners                    | _             | -                                  | -             | -                                  | NO     |
| 5-08                    | Diagonally right<br>down (Straight) |         | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on<br>tubular pieces of fabric and<br>mitering corners              | -             | -                                  | -             | _                                  | NO     |
| 5-09<br>~~~<br>~        | Sideways to left<br>(Zigzag)        | Ň       | Ś          | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric                                         | -             | -                                  | -             | _                                  | NO     |
| 5-10<br>→               | Sideways to<br>right (Zigzag)       |         | 5°S        | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric                                         | -             | -                                  | -             | -                                  | NO     |

| Stitch                 | Stitch name                           | Press | er foot  | Applications                                                                  |                | ch width<br>n (inch)]        |               | h length<br>n (inch)]      | Twin   |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|--------|
| onten                  | outen name                            | 60    | <u> </u> | Applications                                                                  | Auto.          | Manual                       | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle |
| 5-11<br>₹↓             | Forward<br>(Zigzag)                   | Ř     | Ś        | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners       | -              | -                            | -             | _                          | NO     |
| 5-12<br>{              | Reverse<br>(Zigzag)                   |       | Ś        | For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners       | _              | -                            | _             | -                          | NO     |
| <b>Q-01</b>            | Piecing stitch<br>(Middle)            | i J   | C        | Piecework/patchwork                                                           | _              | -                            | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-02                   | Piecing stitch<br>(Right)             | i J   | Ś        | Piecework/patchwork<br>6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right<br>seam allowance      | 5.50<br>(7/32) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| <b>Q-03</b>            | Piecing stitch<br>(Left)              | i j   | Ś        | Piecework/patchwork<br>6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left<br>seam allowance       | 1.50<br>(1/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-04<br>               | Hand-look<br>quilting                 | i J   | Ś        | Quilting stitch made to look<br>like hand quilting stitch                     | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-05<br> <br> <br>     | Basting stitch                        | i J   | Ś        | Basting                                                                       | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 20<br>(3/4)   | 5 - 30<br>(3/16 - 1-3/16)  | NO     |
| Q-06<br>47<br>77<br>47 | Stem stitch                           | Ĩ     | Ś        | Reinforced stitching, sewing<br>and decorative applications                   | 1.00<br>(1/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q−07                   | Quilting<br>appliqué zigzag<br>stitch | Ĩ     | Ś        | Zigzag stitch for quilting and<br>sewing on appliqué quilt<br>pieces          | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 5.0<br>(0 - 3/16)    | NO     |
| Q-08                   | Zigzag stitch<br>(Right)              | i j   | Ś        | Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left                          | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 2.50 - 5.00<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.3 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-09                   | Zigzag stitch<br>(Left)               | i j   | Ś        | Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right                          | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 2.50 - 5.00<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.3 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-10<br>               | 2 steps elastic<br>zigzag             | Ĩ     | Ś        | Overcasting (medium weight<br>and stretch fabrics), tape and<br>elastic       | 5.00<br>(3/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-11                   | 3 steps elastic<br>zigzag             | i J   | Ś        | Overcasting (medium,<br>heavyweight and stretch<br>fabrics), tape and elastic | 5.00<br>(3/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-12<br>               | Quilting<br>appliqué stitch           | i J   | Ś        | Quilting stitch for invisible<br>appliqué or attaching binding                | 2.00<br>(1/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-13                   | Shell tuck edge                       |       | Ś        | Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics                                             | 4.00<br>(3/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-14                   | Blanket stitch                        |       | Ś        | Appliqués, decorative blanket<br>stitch                                       | 3.50<br>(1/8)  | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| ۹-15<br>کې کې          | Quilting<br>stippling                 |       | Ś        | Background quilting                                                           | 7.00<br>(1/4)  | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-16<br>[<br>[<br>[    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | i li  | Ś        | Stretch knit seam                                                             | 5.00<br>(3/16) | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |

| Stitch                                        | Stitch name                            | Presser foot |           | Applications                                            | Stitch width<br>[mm (inch)] |                              | Stitch length<br>[mm (inch)] |                            | Twin   |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|
| outen                                         |                                        |              | <u>or</u> | Applications                                            | Auto.                       | Manual                       | Auto.                        | Manual                     | needle |
| Q-17<br>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , | Tape attaching                         |              | Ś         | Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric                | 5.50<br>(7/32)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16)                | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-18                                          | Serpentine<br>stitch                   |              | Ś         | Decorative stitching and attaching elastic              | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16)                | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-19                                          | Feather stitch                         | Ĩ            | °5        | Fagoting, decorative stitching                          | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-20                                          | Fagoting cross<br>stitch               |              | Ó         | Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching             | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-21<br>/-^v_^.                               | Couching stitch                        | i j          | °5        | Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching       | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.2<br>(1/16)                | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-22                                          | Patchwork<br>double overlock<br>stitch |              | °S        | Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching                | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-23                                          | Smocking stitch                        | L .          | Ś         | Smocking, decorative<br>stitching                       | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-24                                          | Rick-rack stitch                       |              | Ś         | Decorative top stitching                                | 4.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-25<br>MMW                                   | Decorative<br>stitch                   |              | Ś         | Decorative stitching and appliqué                       | 6.00<br>(15/64)             | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16)                | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-26<br>XXXX<br>XXXX                          | Decorative<br>stitch                   | i J          | Ś         | Decorative stitching                                    | 5.50<br>(7/32)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-27<br>1++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++ | Hemstitching                           |              | Ś         | Heirloom, decorative hems                               | 5.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-28<br>↓<br>↓                                | Hemstitching                           |              | Ś         | Decorative hems and bridging stitch                     | 6.00<br>(15/64)             | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-29                                          | Single diamond overcast                | Ĩ            | Ś         | Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric                | 6.00<br>(15/64)             | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 3.0<br>(1/8)                 | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| Q-30                                          | Overcasting<br>stitch                  |              | Ś         | Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching | 4.00<br>(3/16)              | 0.00 - 7.00<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.4 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO     |
| C-01                                          | Free motion<br>couching stitch         |              | ×         | Free motion couching stitch                             | 3.50<br>(1/8)               | 2.75 - 3.75<br>(7/64 - 9/64) | _                            | -                          | NO     |

# **S** Sewing

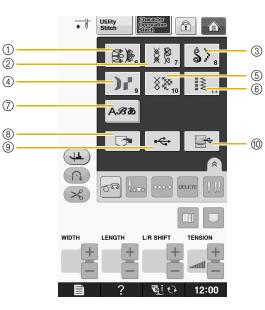
# Chapter **3** Character/Decorative Stitches

#### SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS ......77 Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Characters ......78 SEWING STITCH PATTERNS ......81 Sewing Attractive Finishes ......81 EDITING STITCH PATTERNS......84 Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only) ......87 Creating a Vertical Mirror Image ......87 Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image ......87 Sewing a Pattern Continuously ......87 Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only) ......88 COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS.......90 Combining Various Stitch Patterns ......90 Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns ......91 Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns ......92 Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length ......92 Making Step Stitch Patterns USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION ......95 Stitch Data Precautions ......95 Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save 95 Data .. Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory ......96 Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media......97 Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer......98 Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory ......99 Recalling from USB Media ......100

Recalling from the Computer ......101

## **SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS**

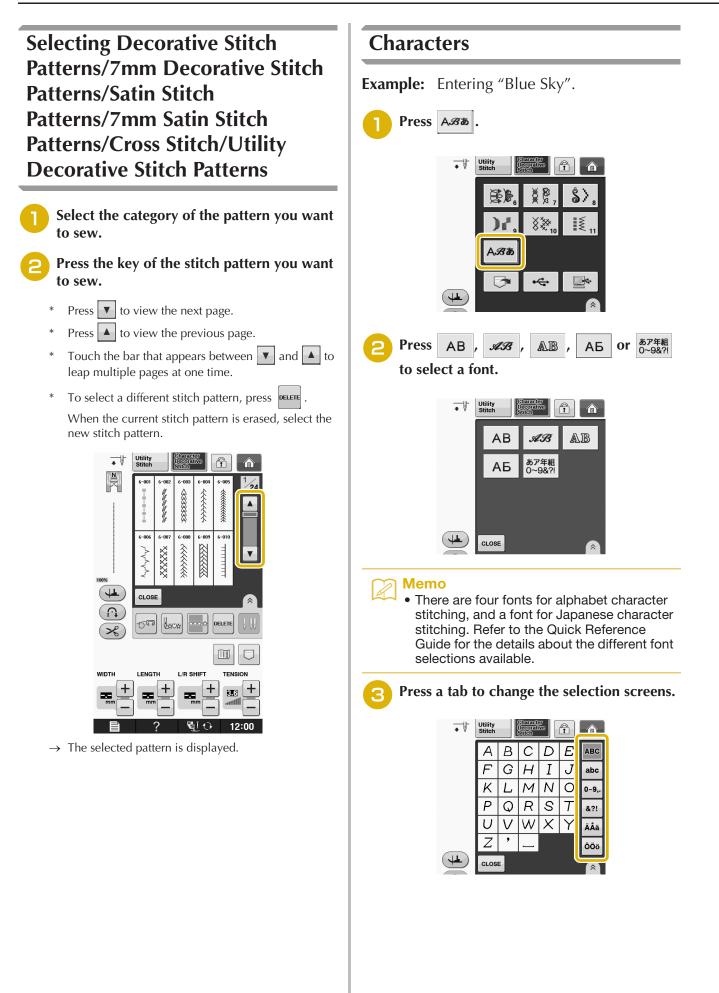
Press Character/Decorative to display the screen below. There are 7 categories of Character/Decorative stitch patterns.

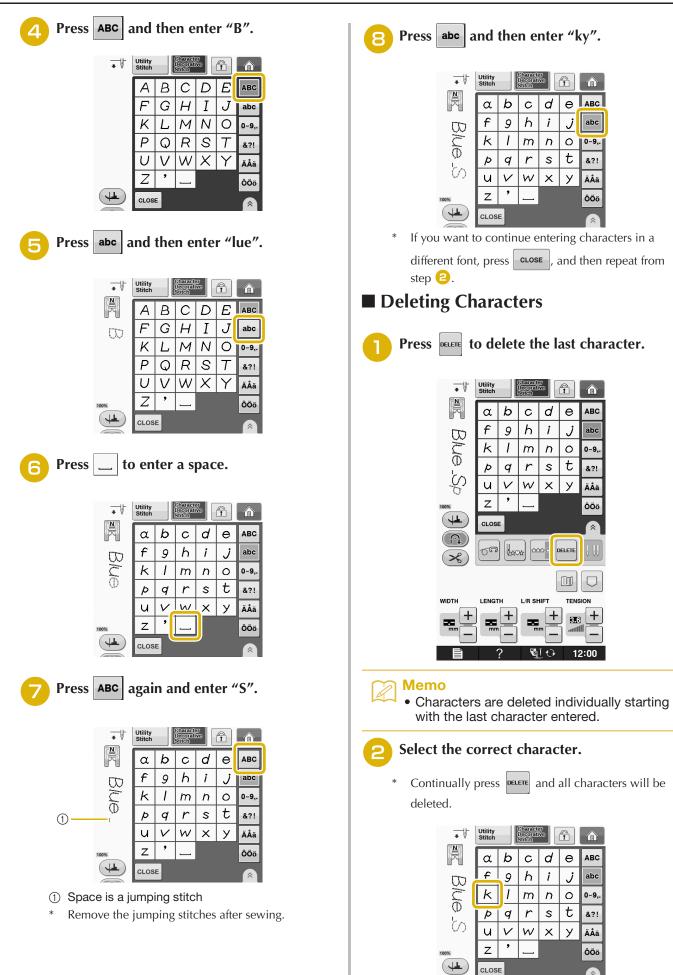


- ① Decorative stitch patterns
- ② 7mm decorative stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ③ Satin stitch patterns
- ④ 7mm satin stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- (5) Cross stitch
- 6 Utility decorative stitch patterns
- ⑦ Characters (Gothic font, Handwriting font, Outline, Cyrillic font, Japanese font)
- ⑧ Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page S-99)
- (9) Patterns saved in USB media (see page S-100)
- (1) Patterns saved on the computer (see page S-101)

### Note

• If the screen is locked ( ] ), unlock the screen by pressing 🛐 . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.



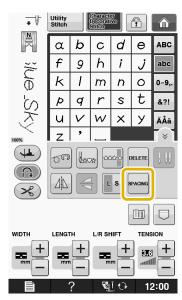


### ■ Adjusting the Character Spacing

The space between the characters can be adjusted.

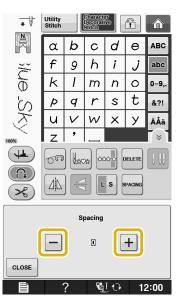


\* Press is to display spacing on the screen.



 $\rightarrow$  The character spacing window appears.

🔁 Press 🗕 or 🕂 to adjust character spacing.



\* Press + to increase the character spacing and

press – to decrease the character spacing.

#### **Example:**

\* Each setting equals a specific distance between characters.

|                | Value | mm   |
|----------------|-------|------|
| 0 10           | 0     | 0    |
|                | 1     | 0.18 |
| Blue<br>Blue S | 2     | 0.36 |
| Blu<br>Blue    | 3     | 0.54 |
| 0 2            | 4     | 0.72 |
| Ω Φ            | 5     | 0.9  |
| ; Sky<br>Sky   | 6     | 1.08 |
| < 7            | 7     | 1.26 |
| 2              | 8     | 1.44 |
|                | 9     | 1.62 |
|                | 10    | 1.8  |

### 🏹 Memo

- The default setting is "0". No number less than "0" can be set.
- Changing character spacing by this method, pertains to all characters. Spacing changes are valid not only while entering characters but also before and after the entering of characters.

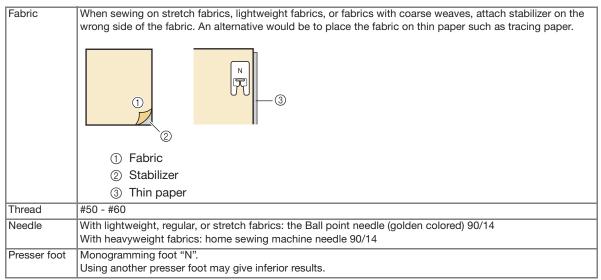
## SEWING STITCH PATTERNS

## Sewing Attractive Finishes

To achieve attractive results when sewing character/decorative stitches, check the table below for the proper fabric/thread/needle combinations.

### Vie Note

- Other factors, such as fabric thickness, stabilizer material, etc., also have an effect on the stitch, so you should always sew a few trial stitches before beginning your project.
  - When sewing satin stitch patterns, there may be shrinking or bunching of stitches, so be sure to attach a stabilizer material.
  - Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.



Δ

## **Basic Sewing**

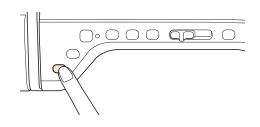
Selec

Select a stitch pattern.

- Attach monogramming foot "N".
- **3** Place the fabric under the presser foot, pull the upper thread out to the side, and then lower the presser foot.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.



# **A** CAUTION

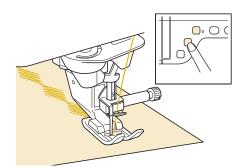
• When sewing 7 mm satin stitch patterns and the stitches are bunched, lengthen the stitch length. If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break ("Setting the Stitch Length" on page S-11).

### 🏹 Memo

 If the fabric is pulled or pushed during sewing, the pattern may not turn out correctly. Also, depending on the pattern, there may be movement to the left and right as well as front and back. Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

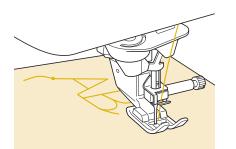
Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing.

Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches.



#### Memo

• When sewing character stitches, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of each character.



• When sewing is completed, trim any excess thread between letters.



### 🟒 Note

 When sewing some patterns, the needle will temporarily pause in the raised position while the fabric is fed due to the operation of the needle bar separation mechanism which is used in this machine. At such times, a clicking sound different from the sound generated during sewing will be heard. This sound is normal and is not the sign of a malfunction.

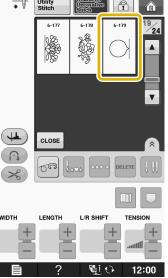
## **Making Adjustments**

Your stitch pattern may sometimes turn out poorly, depending on the type or thickness of fabric, the stabilizer material used, sewing speed, etc. If your sewing does not turn out well, sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing, and adjust the stitch pattern as explained below. If the pattern does not turn out well even after making

adjustments based on the 🔿 pattern, make

adjustments for each pattern individually.



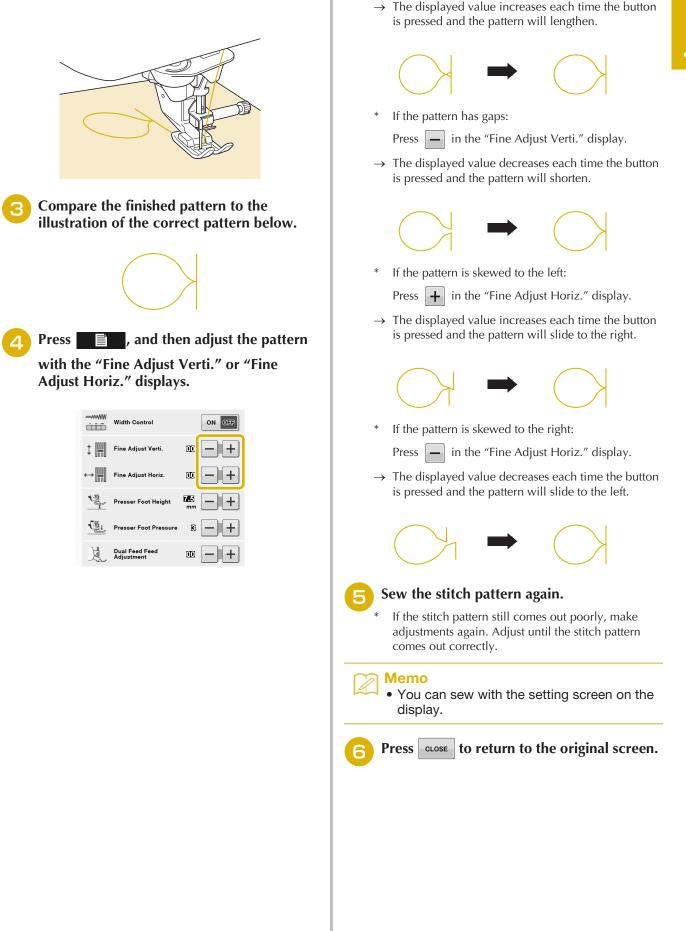


If the pattern is bunched:

Press + in the "Fine Adjust Verti." display.



Attach monogramming foot "N" and sew the pattern.



S

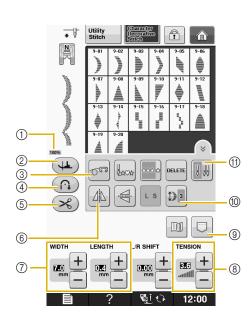
## **EDITING STITCH PATTERNS**

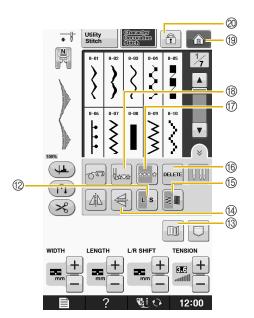
### **Key Functions**

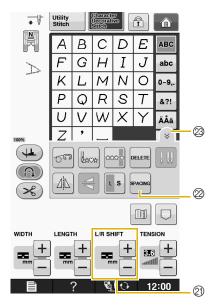
You can create just the finish you want using the editing functions. Make patterns larger or smaller, make mirror images, etc.

🗸 Note

• Some editing functions cannot be used with certain stitch patterns. Only the functions for the displayed keys are available when a pattern is selected.







| No. | Display                                 | Key Name                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                            | Page        |
|-----|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1   | 100%                                    | Pattern display size                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Show the approximate size of the pattern selected.                                                                                                                                     | S-21        |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 100% : Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern                                                                                                                                        |             |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 50% : 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern                                                                                                                                                 |             |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 25% : 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern                                                                                                                                                 |             |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | * The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of fabric and thread that is used.                                                                              |             |
| 2   | ( <b>L</b>                              | Pivot key                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Press this key to select the pivot setting. When the pivot setting is                                                                                                                  | S-15        |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered. |             |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <ul> <li>If this key appears as , the pivot function cannot be used.</li> </ul>                                                                                                        |             |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | • Be sure the "Needle Position - UP/DOWN" of Machine Settings is set to the down position.                                                                                             |             |
| 3   |                                         | Free motion mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode.                                                                                                                                       | S-40        |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The feed dog is lowered and presser foot is raised to a height appropriate for free motion quilting.                                                                                   |             |
| 4   |                                         | Automatic                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Press this key to turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching mode.                                                                                                                  | S-5         |
|     |                                         | reinforcement stitch key                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |
| 5   |                                         | Automatic thread         Press this key to turn on the automatic thread cutting mode.                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        | S-14        |
|     | P                                       | cutting key                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |
| 6   |                                         | Horizontal mirror<br>image key                                                                                                                                                                                                         | After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the stitch pattern.                                                                            | S-87        |
| 7   | WIDTH LENGTH                            | Stitch width and                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Shows the stitch width and stitch length of the selected stitch pattern. The                                                                                                           | S-10 to     |
|     |                                         | stitch length key                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | machine default settings are highlighted.                                                                                                                                              | S-12        |
| 8   | TENSION                                 | Thread tension key                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Shows the thread tension setting for the selected stitch pattern. The                                                                                                                  | S-12        |
|     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | machine default settings are highlighted                                                                                                                                               |             |
| 9   |                                         | Memory key                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | emory key Use this key to save stitch pattern combinations.                                                                                                                            |             |
| 10  |                                         | Elongation key                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press this key to choose                                                                                                                  | S-87        |
|     | <b>()</b> 3                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.                                                                                  |             |
| (1) |                                         | Needle mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Press this key to choose single needle sewing or twin needle sewing.                                                                                                                   | "Basic      |
|     | 0 00                                    | selection key<br>(Single/Double)                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                        | operations" |
| 12  |                                         | Size selection key                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Use this key to select the size of the stitch pattern (large, small).                                                                                                                  | S-86        |
|     | LS                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |
| 13  |                                         | Image key                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.                                                                                                            | S-89        |
| 14  |                                         | Vertical mirror image key After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a vertical mirror image of the stitch pattern.                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                        | S-87        |
| 15  |                                         | Thread density key After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to change the thread density of the pattern.                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                        | S-88        |
| 16  |                                         | Delete key                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | When you make a mistake selecting a stitch pattern, use this key to delete                                                                                                             | S-78,       |
|     | DELETE                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | the mistake. When you make a mistake in combining stitch patterns, use this key to delete stitch patterns.                                                                             | S-79        |
| 17  | (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) | Single/Repeat sewing Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches. key                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                        | S-87        |
| 18  | Uxcx                                    | Back to beginning key When sewing is stopped, press this key to return to the beginning of the pattern.                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                        | S-88        |
| 19  |                                         | Home page screen<br>key                                                                                                                                                                                                                | (For embroidery and sewing machine only)<br>Press this key to return to the home page screen.                                                                                          | -           |
| 20  |                                         | Screen lock key         Press this key to lock the screen. When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings. |                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |

Sewing S-85

| No. | Display | Key Name                 | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Page |
|-----|---------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2   |         | "L/R SHIFT" key          | Press + to shift the stitch pattern to the right or press - to shift the pattern to the left. This feature is not available on all patterns. Only those applicable will be shifted. The machine default setting is highlighted. | S-11 |
| 2   | SPACING | Character spacing<br>key | Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.                                                                                                                                                                     |      |
| 23  | *       | Function page key        | Press this key to show all the functions available in this screen.                                                                                                                                                              | S-80 |

## Changing the Size

Select a stitch pattern, then press us to change the size of the stitch pattern. The stitch pattern will be sewn in the size highlighted on the key.

| 0000 | DELETE |  |
|------|--------|--|
| LS   |        |  |

### Memo

- If you continue entering stitch patterns after changing the size, those patterns will also be sewn in that size.
- You cannot change the size of combined stitch patterns once the stitch pattern is entered.

### **Actual Stitch Pattern Size**

\* The size differs depending on the fabric and threads.









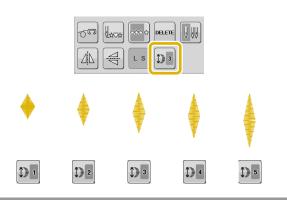




## Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

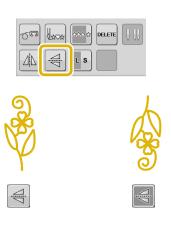
When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press

**D**<sup>3</sup> to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.



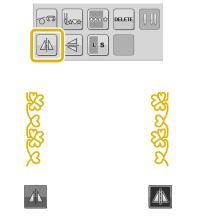
## Creating a Vertical Mirror Image

To create a vertical mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press  $\bigcirc$ .



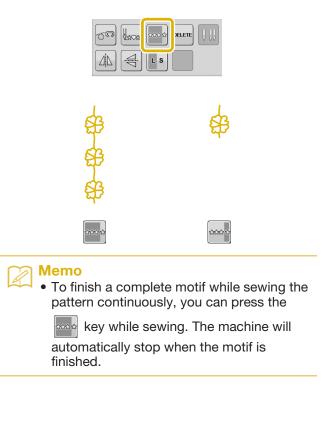
## Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

To create a horizontal mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press  $\boxed{1}$ .



## Sewing a Pattern Continuously

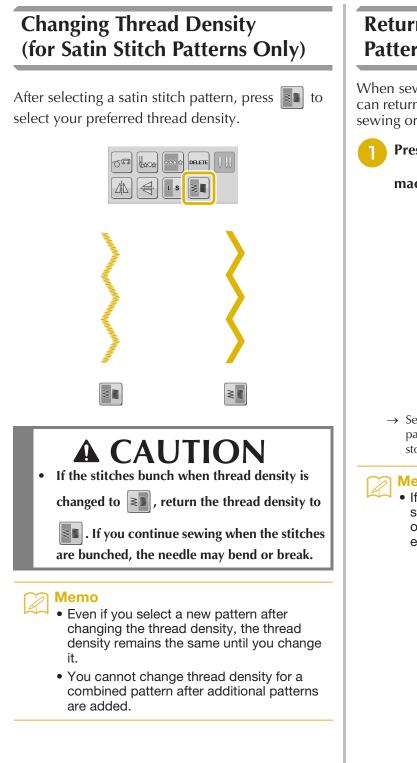
Press we to select continuous sewing or single stitch sewing.



S

3

Character/Decorative Stitches



## Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern

When sewing character/decorative stitches, you can return to the beginning of the pattern after trial sewing or when the stitching is sewn incorrectly.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the

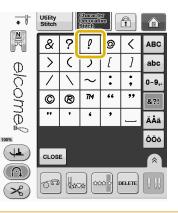
machine, and then press



 $\rightarrow$  Sewing returns to the beginning of the selected pattern ("W") from the point where sewing was stopped.

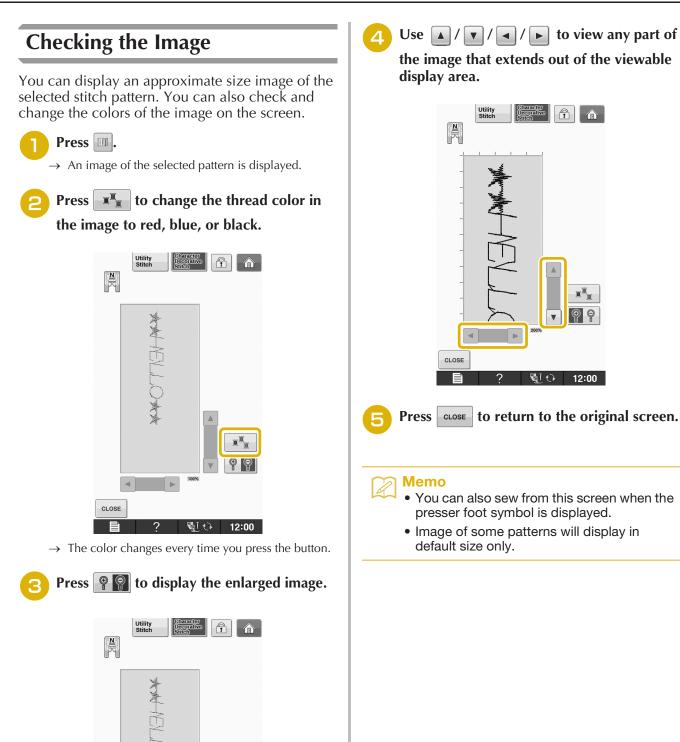
### Memo

• If this key is pressed when sewing is stopped, patterns can be added at the end of a combined stitch pattern. (In this example, "!" is added.)





Press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.



u<sup>II</sup>u ⊕ ©

12:00

-

CLOSE

SU 🗘

?

# **COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS**

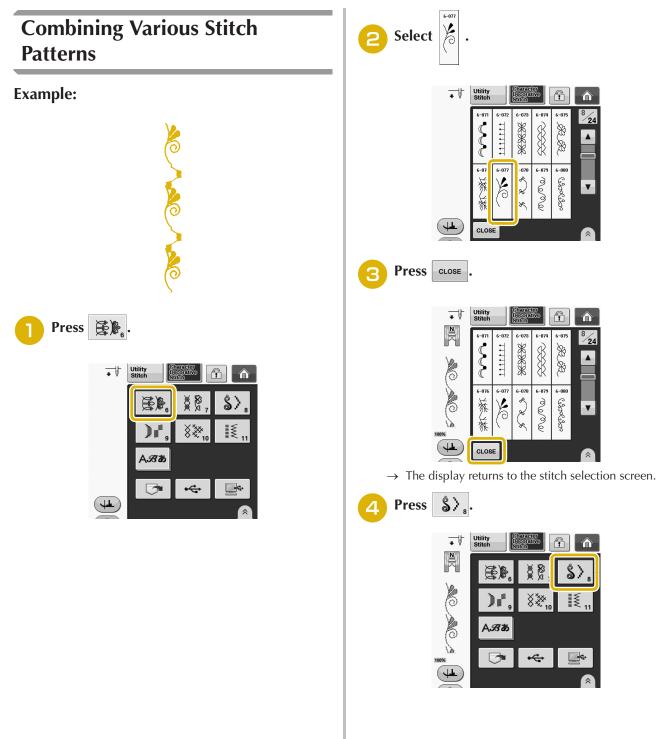
You can combine many varieties of stitch patterns, such as character stitches, cross stitches or satin stitches. You can also combine stitch patterns of different sizes, mirror image stitch patterns, and others.

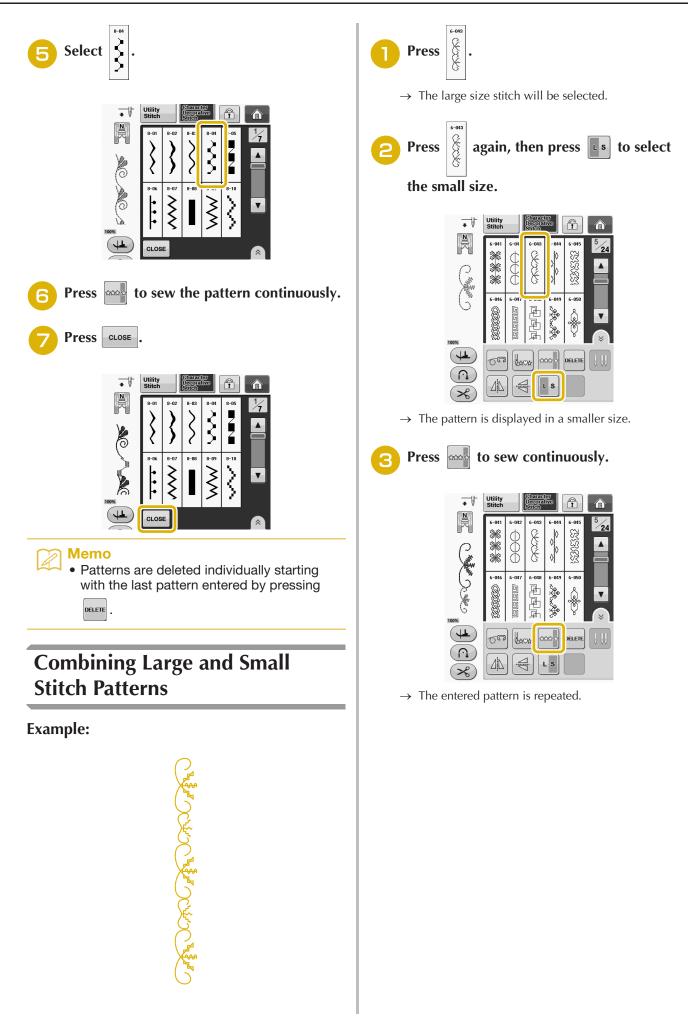
## **Before Combining**

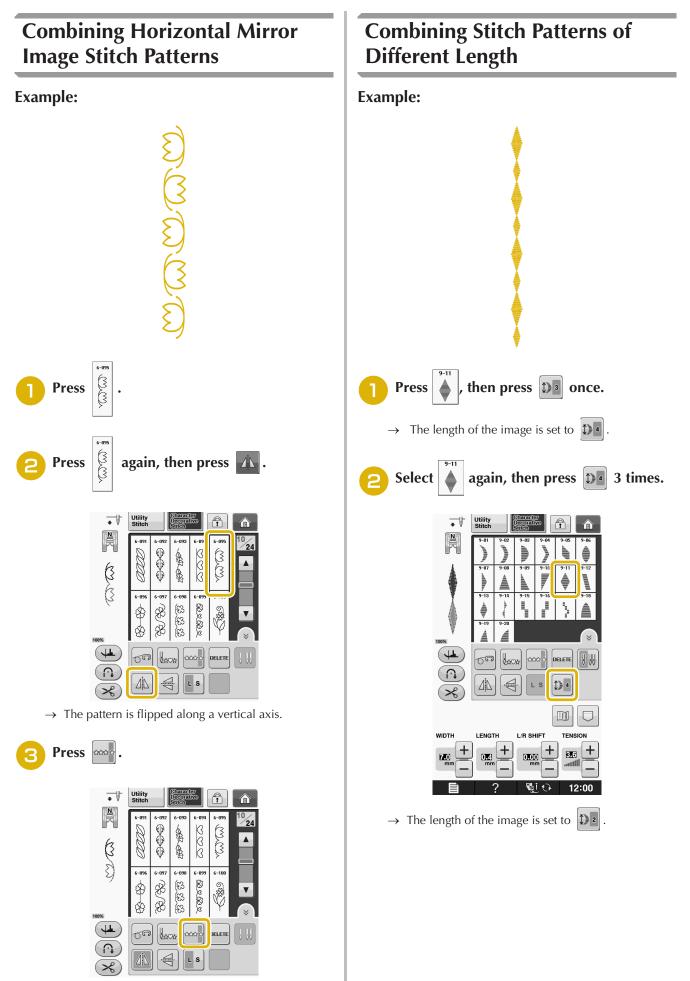
Single stitch sewing is automatically selected for sewing combined patterns. If you want to sew the

pattern continuously, press after finishing the stitch pattern combination.

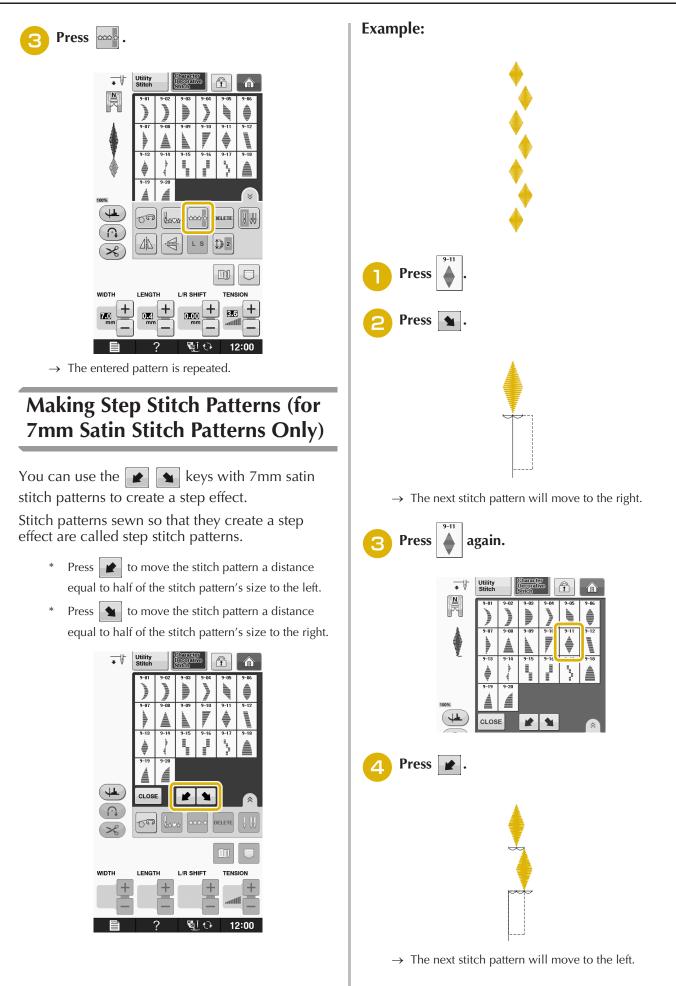
When changing sizes, creating mirror images, or making other adjustments to a combined stitch pattern, be sure to edit the selected stitch pattern before selecting the next one. You cannot edit a stitch pattern once the next stitch pattern is selected.



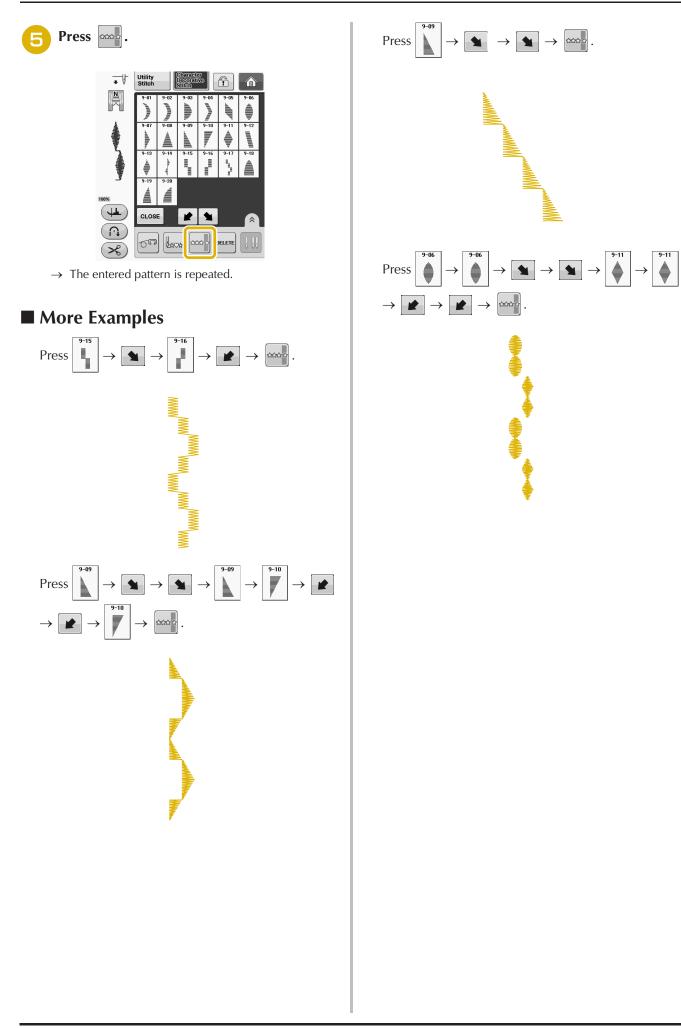




 $\rightarrow$  The entered pattern is repeated.



S



# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

## Stitch Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using stitch data other than that created and saved in this machine.

#### **Types of Stitch Data that can be Used**

• In the Character/Decorative Stitch memory, ".pmv", ".pmx" and ".pmu" stitch data files can be used with this machine. ".pmx" or ".pmu" stitch data files can be retrieved; however, when the machine is used to save the file, it is saved as a ".pmv" stitch data file. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or machines may cause the machine to malfunction.

#### ■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB external media. Use external media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)
- USB Floppy disk drive

Stitch data can be recalled only from;

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of media with the USB Memory Card Reader/USB card writer module.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- xD-Picture Card

#### 🟒 Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).
- To create file folders, use a computer.

### Connecting Your Machine to the Computer

- Compatible models: IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems: Microsoft Windows 8.1, Windows 10

#### Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the stitch data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9, "-", and "\_".
- Stitch data in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If stitch data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that stitch data cannot be retrieved by the machine.

## Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory

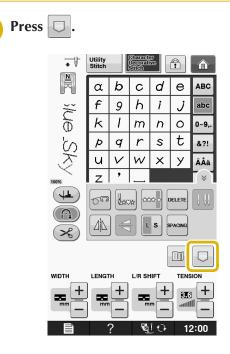
You can save often used stitch patterns in the machine's memory. A total of about 511 KB of stitch patterns can be saved in the machine's memory.

#### Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

#### 🏹 Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a stitch pattern.
- See page S-99 for information on retrieving a saved stitch pattern.





\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.



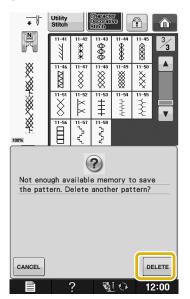
→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

### If the Memory is Full

If the following screen appears while you are trying to save a pattern on the machine's memory, the memory is too full to hold the currently selected stitch pattern. To save the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, you have to delete a previously saved stitch pattern.

### Press Delete .

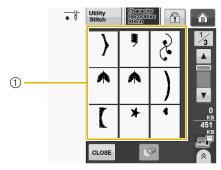
\* Press **CANCEL** to return to the original screen without saving.





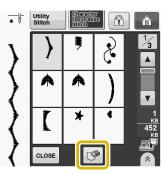
#### Choose a stitch pattern to delete.

\* Press **CLOSE** if you decide not to delete the stitch pattern.



① Pockets holding saved stitch patterns

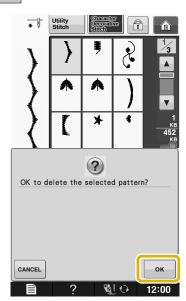
Press 🚱



 $\rightarrow$  A confirmation message appears.

| 4 | Press | ок | • |
|---|-------|----|---|
| 4 | Press | ок | • |

\* If you decide not to delete the stitch pattern, press



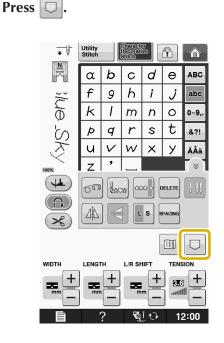
→ The machine deletes the stitch pattern, then automatically saves the new stitch pattern.

## Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media

When sending stitch patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's top USB port.

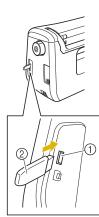
#### Memo

- USB media is commercially available, but some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time except when saving or deleting.





#### Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.



① USB port for mouse/media

② USB media

#### Note

 The processing speed may vary by quantity of data.

#### Press **•**

CLOSE to return to the original screen without Press saving.



 $\rightarrow$  The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### Note

 Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the pattern you are saving.

## Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer

Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the stitch patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer. A total of about 772KB of stitch patterns can be saved in the "Removable Disk", but the saved stitch patterns are deleted when the machine is turned OFF.

For Computers and Operating Systems, see "Connecting Your Machine to the Computer" on page S-95.

#### Note

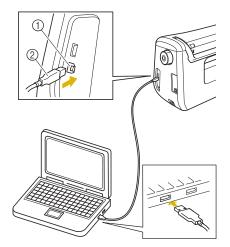
Do not turn the main power to OFF while the • "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.



#### Turn on your computer and select "Computer (My computer)".

The USB cable can be plugged into the USB ports on the computer and machine whether or not they are turned on.

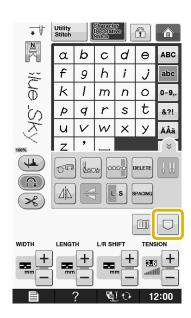


- ① USB port for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "Computer (My computer)" on the computer.

#### Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force and check the orientation of the connector.
  - For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

Press 🗔.





\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.



- → The stitch pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My computer)".
- Select the stitch pattern's .pmv file and copy the file to the computer.

| Organize 👻 📄 Open | Burn New folder | E - 11 ( | 0 |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------|---|
| Ar Favorites      |                 |          |   |
| Ja Libraries      |                 |          |   |
| Computer          | 999999466.pmx   |          |   |
| Wetwork           |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |
|                   |                 |          |   |

#### ير Note

 Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving" screen is showing. You may lose the data.

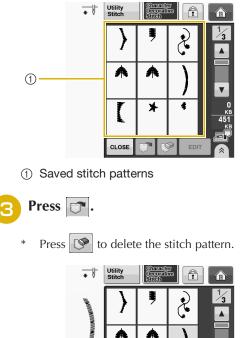
# Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory

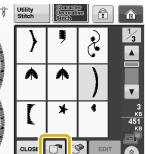


 $\rightarrow$  The pocket selection screen appears.

#### Choose a stitch pattern to retrieve.

- \* If the entire saved stitch pattern is not displayed, press the thumbnail.
- \* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.





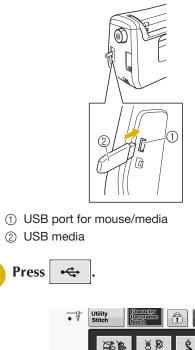
→ The selected stitch pattern is retrieved and the sewing screen will be displayed.

## **Recalling from USB Media**

You can recall a specific stitch pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the stitch pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the stitch pattern.



# Insert the USB Media into the USB port on the machine (see page S-97).





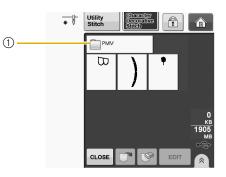
→ Stitch patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

🔁 Press 📋

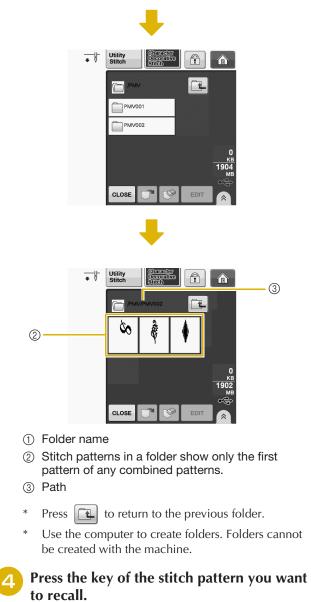
#### when there is a subfolder to

sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the stitch pattern in the subfolder is displayed.

\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without recalling.

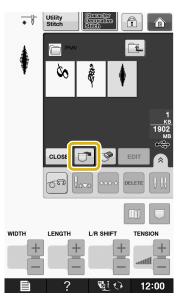


→ Stitch patterns and a subfolder within a folder are displayed. Select the folder to display the patterns in it.





\* Press 💽 to delete the stitch pattern. The pattern will be deleted from the USB media.

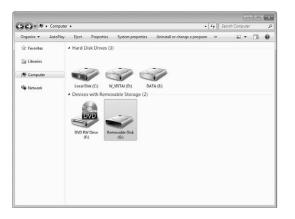


 $\rightarrow\,$  The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

## **Recalling from the Computer**

For Computers and Operating Systems, see "Connecting Your Machine to the Computer" on page S-95.

- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine (see page S-98).
- On the computer, open "Computer (My computer)" then go to "Removable Disk".



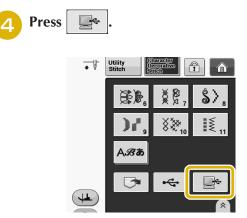
| 3 | Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable |
|---|------------------------------------------|
| C | Disk".                                   |

| Organize      Share with      New folder | E • 🔟 (                       |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 🔆 Favorites                              | This folder is empty.         |
| 🗊 Libraries                              |                               |
| E Computer                               |                               |
| W Network                                |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          |                               |
|                                          | + Copy to Removable Disk (G:) |
|                                          | 99904948 <del>4</del> 11      |

 $\rightarrow\,$  Stitch pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.

#### 🗤 Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.



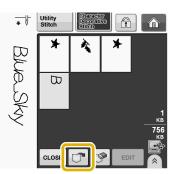
 $\rightarrow\,$  The stitch patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.

Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without recalling.



Press ress to delete the stitch pattern.
 The pattern will be deleted from the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

#### 🟒 Note

• The pattern recalled from the computer is only temporarily written to the machine. It is erased from the machine when the machine is turned off. If you wish to keep the stitch pattern, store it in the machine ("Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory" on page S-96).

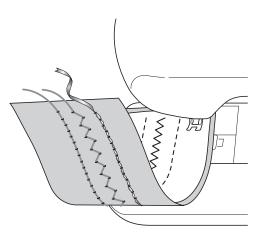
# **S** Sewing

# Chapter **4** How to Create Bobbin Work (Sewing)

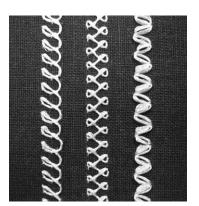
| ABOUT BOBBIN WORK105                                            |  |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK105                                    |  |  |
| Required Materials105                                           |  |  |
| Bobbin case and bobbin cover 105                                |  |  |
| Lower thread 106                                                |  |  |
| Upper thread 106                                                |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Needle</li></ul>                                       |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Presser 1001</li></ul>                                 |  |  |
| Upper Threading106                                              |  |  |
| Preparing the Bobbin Thread                                     |  |  |
|                                                                 |  |  |
| <ul> <li>When tension is applied to the bobbin thread</li></ul> |  |  |
| When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread 109            |  |  |
| CREATING BOBBIN WORK111                                         |  |  |
| Positioning the Fabric and Sewing111                            |  |  |
| Finishing the thread ends 113                                   |  |  |
| Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing113                               |  |  |
| ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION114                                 |  |  |
| Adjusting the upper thread tension                              |  |  |
| Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread 114                  |  |  |
| TROUBLESHOOTING115                                              |  |  |
| The thread was activated and the bobbin                         |  |  |
| thread is caught inside the machine 115                         |  |  |
| Correcting bobbin work tension 115                              |  |  |
| The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring                 |  |  |
| of the bobbin case 115                                          |  |  |

# **ABOUT BOBBIN WORK**

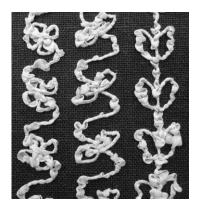
Beautiful sewing work, with a three-dimensional appearance, can be created by winding the bobbin with medium to heavy weight thread or ribbon, which is too thick to be threaded through the machine's needle. The decorative thread or ribbon will stitch out on the underneath side of fabric while sewing with the fabric wrong side facing up.



1. Utility stitches



2. Decorative stitches



3. Free motion sewing



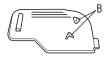
# **PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK**

## **Required Materials**

Bobbin case and bobbin cover



Bobbin case (gray) There is a notch at the location indicated by the letter "A".



Bobbin cover There are two small v-shaped tabs on the back of the bobbin cover as indicated by the letter "B". The tabs help hold the bobbin in place so it does not lift up while thick thread is being pulled through. S

### Lower thread

We recommend the following types of threads for bobbin work.



No.5 or finer hand embroidery thread or decorative thread



Flexible woven ribbon



Fine embroidery ribbon (silk or silk-like material) (3.5 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) or less is recommended)

\* When wide ribbon or heavy weight threads are being used, we recommend test sewing with and without bobbin case tension being applied to see which gives the best stitching results. If wide ribbon such as 3.5mm (approx. 1/8 inch) is to be used, we recommend that bobbin case tension not be applied. Refer to page S-109 for more detailed instructions.

#### 🗸 Note

- Do not use thread heavier than No.5 hand embroidery thread.
- Some threads may not be appropriate for bobbin work. Be sure to sew trial stitches before sewing on your project.

### ■ Upper thread

Sewing machine embroidery thread (polyester thread) or monofilament (transparent nylon) thread. If you do not wish for the upper thread to be visible, we recommend using transparent nylon monofilament thread or polyester light weight thread (50wt. or above) that is the same color as the lower thread.

### Needle

Use a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric being used. Refer to "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" of "Basic operations".

### Presser foot

Utility stitches or decorative stitches: Monogramming foot "N"  $\,$ 



Free motion sewing:

Free motion quilting foot "C", Free motion echo quilting foot "E" or Free motion open toe quilting foot "O"





### Fabric

Be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric, which includes the same threads and fabric as what is being used in your project.

#### Vice Note

• The sewing results may be affected by the type of fabric used. Before sewing your project, be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as the fabric used in the project.

# **Upper Threading**



# Install a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric to be used.

For details on installing the needle, refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" of "Basic operations".



#### Attach the presser foot.

#### Thread the machine with the upper thread.

For details on threading the machine, refer to "Upper Threading" of "Basic operations".

## Preparing the Bobbin Thread

In order to create bobbin work, the bobbin case must be replaced with the one for bobbin work.

Before creating bobbin work, clean the bobbin case and the race.



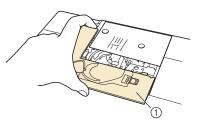
Raise the needle and presser foot, and then turn off the machine.



Remove the flat bed attachment.



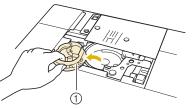
Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you to remove it.



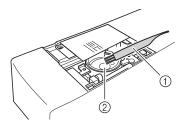
① Needle plate cover



Remove the bobbin case.



- ① Bobbin case
- Use the cleaning brush included with the machine or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.

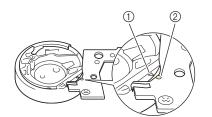


① Cleaning brush

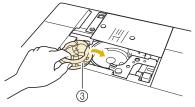
② Race

- Wipe the bobbin case (gray) with a soft lint free cloth to clean it.
- 7 Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.





\* Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\bullet$  marks.



- (1)  $\blacktriangle$  mark on the bobbin case
- ② mark on the machine
- 3 Bobbin case

#### 🗸 Note

• The bobbin case (gray) cannot be used for sewing in any way other than bobbin work. After sewing bobbin work, refer back to the steps in "Preparing the Bobbin Thread" on page S-107 for removing and cleaning the bobbin case (gray), and then reinstall the standard bobbin case.

# **A** CAUTION

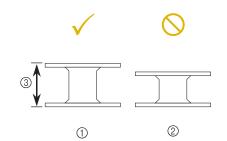
- Be sure to use the bobbin case (gray) when creating bobbin work. Using any other bobbin case may result in the thread becoming tangled or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed. If the bobbin case is incorrectly installed, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.

8 Wind a decorative thread around the bobbin by hand. After winding the bobbin so it is filled as shown below (about 80%), cut the thread.



# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to use the machine's included bobbin or one designed specifically for this machine. Using any other bobbin may result in damage or injuries.



#### 1 This model

- ② Other models
- ③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

#### Note

- Slowly and evenly wind the thread around the bobbin.
- For best results, wind the bobbin so the thread is snug and not twisted.

# Using scissors carefully trim the thread tail as close to the bobbin as possible.



① Beginning of wound thread

# **A** CAUTION

• If thread extends beyond the top of the bobbin too much, the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.

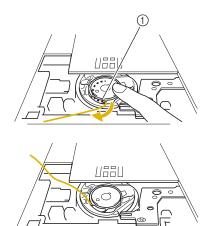


Install the bobbin wound with thread.

Whether or not tension should be applied to the bobbin thread depends on the type of thread being used.

# When tension is applied to the bobbin thread

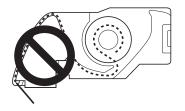
Insert bobbin into bobbin case so the thread unwinds from the left side. Then correctly pass the thread through the tension spring as shown below.



① Tension spring

# **A** CAUTION

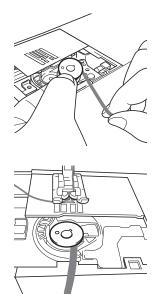
- When winding the bobbin, make sure the thread is not frayed. Sewing with frayed thread may result in the thread catching on the tension spring of the bobbin case, the thread completely becoming tangled or damage to the machine.
- Do not guide the bobbin thread through the groove in the needle plate cover, otherwise the lower threading cannot be done correctly.



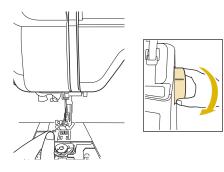
# When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread

If the bobbin thread in the trial stitching is too tight and adjusting the bobbin case tension does not help, do not pass the thread through the tension spring.

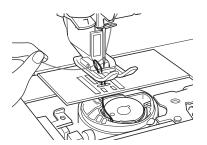
Hold the bobbin with your left hand so the thread unwinds from the right side and hold the end of the thread with your right hand.



- Pull out about 8 cm (approx. 3 inches) of bobbin thread.
  - 2 Lightly hold the end of the upper thread while turning the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) until the mark on the handwheel aligns with the center top of machine.



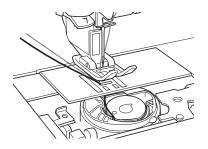
# Gently pull the upper thread to bring the bobbin thread up through the needle plate.



 $\rightarrow$  A loop of the bobbin thread comes out through the hole in the needle plate.

4 Insert tweezers through bobbin thread loop and pull bobbin thread above the needle plate.

5 Align the upper thread and bobbin thread, and then pull out about 10 cm (approx. 4 inches) of the threads and pass them under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.

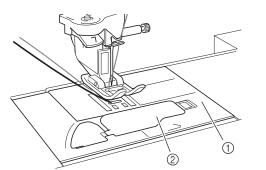


S



# Install the needle plate cover and bobbin cover with tabs.

For details on installing the needle plate cover, refer to "Cleaning the Race" on page A-15.



- ① Bobbin cover
- ② Bobbin cover with tabs

# **A** CAUTION

• When creating bobbin work, use the bobbin cover with tabs, otherwise the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.

#### 🟒 Note

• When installing the needle plate cover, do not allow it to pinch the thread.

#### Install the flat bed attachment.

#### 🗸 Note

- When installing the flat bed attachment, do not allow it to pinch the thread.
- When the bobbin thread is replaced with a new one, be sure to repeat the procedure from 1, otherwise the lower threading will not be done correctly.
- $\rightarrow$  This completes the upper and lower threading.

# **CREATING BOBBIN WORK**

# Positioning the Fabric and Sewing

#### Note

- Recommended stitches for bobbin work are open "airy" type stitches.
- · Be sure to sew trial stitches using same fabric and threads as project in order to check the sewing results.
- The bobbin thread may become tangled due to the type of pattern and thread that are being used. Since this may cause the needle to break, immediately stop sewing if this occurs. Turn off the machine and cut out the tangled thread with scissors. Then, clean the race and bobbin case as described in "Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed" of "Appendix".

Turn on the machine.

Select a stitch in the Utility and Decorative

Stitches mode. For this example, press

#### Memo

 For best results, select a longer stitch length and a wider stitch width. Depending on the selected stitch, it may not be possible to change the stitch length and stitch width settings.



 Depending on the fabric, bunched stitches may result. We recommend selecting a simple stitch and sewing trial stitches to check the sewing results.

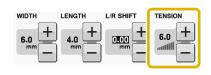
Examples of simple stitches:





#### Increase the upper thread tension. Upper thread tension setting between 6 and 8 is recommended for bobbin work.

For details on adjusting the upper thread tension, refer to "Setting the Thread Tension" on page S-12.



#### Note

Before sewing, check that there is enough thread on the bobbin.

#### Make sure the automatic thread cutting $((\succ))$ and automatic reinforcement stitching ( $(\bigcirc)$ ) have been turned off.

# CAUTION

- Before sewing, make sure the automatic thread cutting has been turned off. If sewing is started with automatic thread cutting turned on, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.
- Place stabilizer on top (wrong side) of the 5 fabric.

#### Note

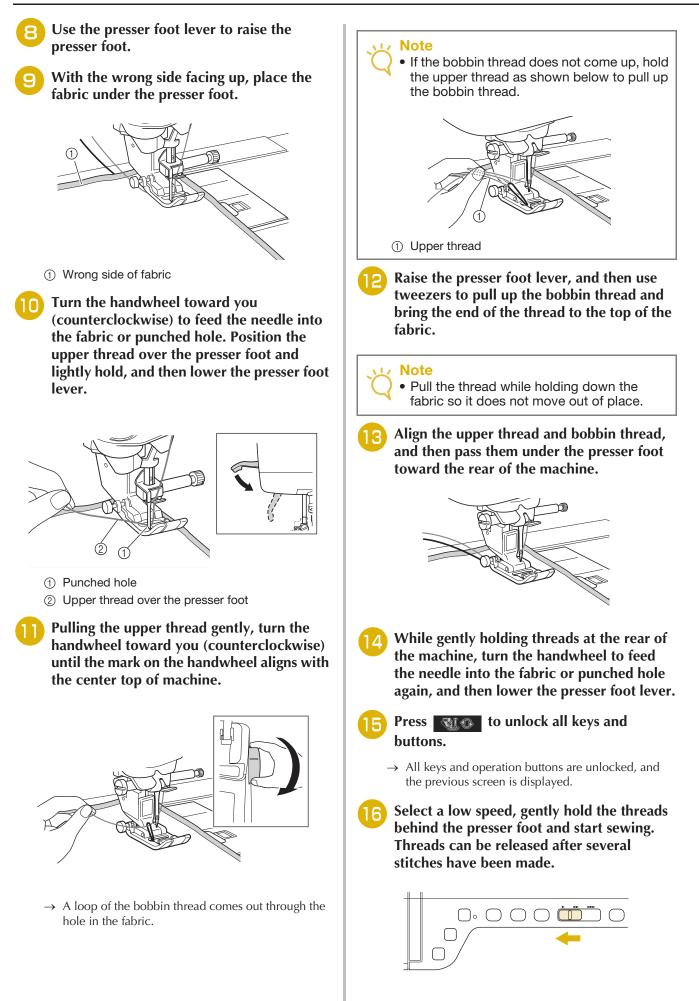
• Type and weight of stabilizer will depend on fabric and thread being used.

If thread is too thick to pull through fabric to machine surface use an awl to punch a small hole in the fabric at the beginning of stitching so the bobbin thread can be fed through the opening.



#### **W**O to lock all keys and buttons.

The screen changes, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

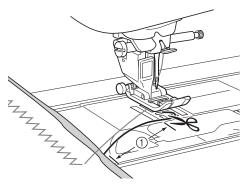




# When you have reached the end of the stitching area, stop the machine.

#### ப் Note

- Do not sew reverse or reinforcement stitches at the end of the stitching, otherwise the threads may become tangled or the needle may break. In addition, it will be difficult to pull the bobbin thread up to the wrong side of the fabric.
- Raise the needle and presser foot.
- **9** Leaving about 10 cm (approx. 4 inches) of thread at the ends, use scissors to cut the threads.



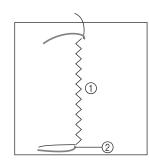
10 cm (approx. 4 inches)

#### 🗤 Note

 Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button to cut the threads, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

### Finishing the thread ends

At the end of the stitching, use a hand sewing needle to bring the bobbin thread up to the wrong side of the fabric.

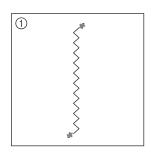


① Wrong side of fabric



#### V Note

- If it is difficult to place bobbin thread through the eye of a hand sewing needle, use a ribbon embroidery needle to pull the thread to the wrong side of the fabric. Otherwise, use an awl to pull up the bobbin thread.
- Working from the wrong side of the fabric, tie the bobbin and upper threads together by hand. Cut away excess threads with scissors.





- ① Wrong side of fabric
- Right side of fabric

#### 🟒 Note

• To ensure threads do not come undone after being tied place a drop of fabric glue on knots.

#### If the desired results could not be achieved, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread and of the upper thread, and then try sewing the stitching again.

For more details, refer to "ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION" on page S-114.

## Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing

If so desired, use a template or draw your design on the stabilizer to allow for ease of stitching. Remember, your stitches with your decorative thread will be on the underneath right side of your fabric and the stabilizer will be on the top wrong side of your fabric.

\* For information about using free motion open toe quilting foot "O", refer to "Free Motion Quilting" on page S-40.

# **ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION**

After sewing trial stitches and checking the sewing results, adjust the thread tensions if necessary. After adjusting the tensions, be sure to sew trial stitches again in order to check the sewing results.

### Adjusting the upper thread tension

We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension when sewing bobbin work. Refer to "Setting the Thread Tension" on page S-12.

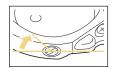
# Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread

If the desired stitching cannot be achieved after adjusting the upper thread tension, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread. The tension of the bobbin thread can be adjusted by turning the slotted-head (–) screw on the bobbin case (gray) for bobbin work.

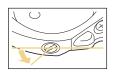


- ① Do not turn the phillips screw (+).
- Adjust with a small screwdriver.

To increase the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw  $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$  clockwise.



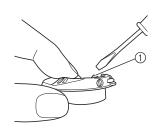
To decrease the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw  $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$  counterclockwise.



🗸 Note

 Turning the screw on the bobbin case (gray) may push up the spring plate, as shown below.

If this occurs, gently press down the spring plate with a screwdriver so it is lower than the top surface of the bobbin case (gray), and then insert the bobbin case into the machine.



 $\textcircled{1} \quad \text{Spring plate} \quad \\$ 

# **A** CAUTION

- DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the bobbin case (gray) as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it useless.
- If the slotted-head screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.

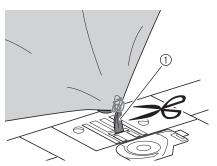
#### 🟒 Note

• If the bobbin thread tension is tight, the thread cannot be passed through the tension spring when the bobbin is installed in the bobbin case. (Refer to "When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread" on page S-109.)

# TROUBLESHOOTING

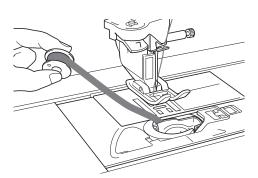
Several solutions for minor problems are described below. If the problem persists, contact your nearest authorized Baby Lock retailer.

- The thread was activated and the bobbin thread is caught inside the machine
  - Cut the thread near the fabric above the needle plate, and then remove the fabric.



① Thread

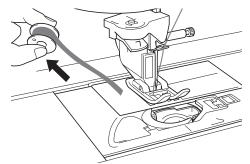
Remove the bobbin, and then hold it out toward the left side of the machine.



З

Lower the presser foot.

Apply slight tension on bobbin thread by holding thread out to the left side of presser foot. Press the "Thread Cutter" button again.





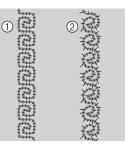
# **A** CAUTION

Do not pull on the thread with excessive force, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

### Correcting bobbin work tension

- \* If the top thread shows on the bobbin side of the fabric, increase the upper tension (Refer to "ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION" on page S-114).
- If the top thread still shows on the bobbin side of the fabric, reduce the tension of the bobbin thread or bypass the bobbin tension. (Refer to "ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION" on page S-114.)
- \* Some bobbin threads are too coarse to pass through to wrong side of fabric. In this case, be sure to color match top thread with bobbin threads.

Example: Decorative Stitch



- ① Correct tension
- ② The upper thread tension is too loose, or the bobbin thread tension is too tight.

# The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring of the bobbin case

Sew with no tension applied to the bobbin thread. (Refer to "When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread" on page S-109.)



This section provides important information for operating this machine. Please read this section to find troubleshooting tips and pointers as well as how to keep your machine in the best working order.

Page number starts with "A" in this section.

The screen display and machine illustration may vary slightly, depending on the country or region.

Chapter1 Maintenance and Troubleshooting...... A-2

# A Appendix

# Chapter **1** Maintenance and Troubleshooting

#### 

| Restrictions on oiling3                                 |  |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Precautions on storing the machine                      |  |  |
| Cleaning the LCD Screen3                                |  |  |
| Cleaning the Machine Casing3                            |  |  |
| Cleaning the Race                                       |  |  |
| Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area5            |  |  |
| About the Maintenance Message                           |  |  |
| ADJUSTING THE SCREEN                                    |  |  |
| ADJOSTING THE SCREEN                                    |  |  |
| Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display6         |  |  |
| Touch Panel is Malfunctioning6                          |  |  |
| TROUBLESHOOTING7                                        |  |  |
| Frequent troubleshooting topics7                        |  |  |
| Upper thread is too tight7                              |  |  |
| Symptom                                                 |  |  |
| Cause                                                   |  |  |
| Remedy/check details                                    |  |  |
| Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric8                 |  |  |
| Symptom 8                                               |  |  |
| Cause 8                                                 |  |  |
| Remedy/check details                                    |  |  |
| Incorrect thread tension10                              |  |  |
| Symptoms 10                                             |  |  |
| Cause/remedy/check details 10                           |  |  |
| Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed11 |  |  |
| Removing the fabric from the machine                    |  |  |
| Checking machine operations 13                          |  |  |
| List of Symptoms14                                      |  |  |
| ERROR MESSAGES17                                        |  |  |
| SPECIFICATIONS19                                        |  |  |
| UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE20                     |  |  |
| Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media                       |  |  |
| Upgrade Procedure Using Computer                        |  |  |
| INDEX                                                   |  |  |
| 1: 1 L/L/L/.                                            |  |  |

# **CARE AND MAINTENANCE**

# **A** CAUTION

Be sure to unplug the machine before cleaning it. Otherwise, electric shock or injury may result.

## **Restrictions on oiling**

In order to prevent damaging this machine, it must not be oiled by the user. This machine was manufactured with the necessary amount of oil applied to ensure correct operation, making periodic oiling unnecessary.

If problems occur, such as difficulty turning the handwheel or an unusual noise, immediately stop using the machine, and contact your nearest authorized retailer.

## Precautions on storing the machine

Do not store the machine in any of the locations described below, otherwise damage to the machine may result, for example, rust caused by condensation.

- Exposed to extremely high temperatures
- Exposed to extremely low temperatures
- Exposed to extreme temperature changes
- Exposed to high humidity or steam
- Near a flame, heater or air conditioner
- Outdoors or exposed to direct sunlight
- Exposed to extremely dusty or oily environments

#### Note

 In order to extend the life of this machine, periodically turn it on and use it. Storing this machine for an extended period of time without using it may reduce its efficiency.

## **Cleaning the LCD Screen**

If the screen is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use organic solvents or detergents.

#### Note

 Do not wipe the LCD screen with a damp cloth.

#### Memo

Occasionally, condensation may form on the LCD screen or it may become fogged up; however, this is not a malfunction. After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.

## **Cleaning the Machine Casing**

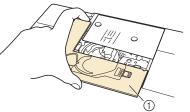
To remove dirt from the machine, use a soft cloth that has been soaked in lukewarm water and then thoroughly wrung dry.

After cleaning the machine, dry it with a soft, dry cloth.

## **Cleaning the Race**

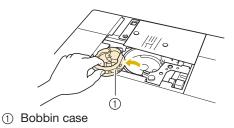
If dust or bits of dirt collect in the race or bobbin case, the machine will not run well, and the bobbin thread detection function may not operate. Keep the machine clean for best results.

- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- - Turn the main power to OFF.
- Remove the needle, presser foot, and presser foot holder (see page B-45 through **B-47).**
- - Remove the flat bed attachment.
  - Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.

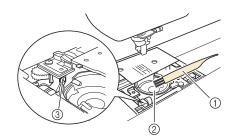


- Needle plate cover
- $\rightarrow$  The needle plate cover is removed.

Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



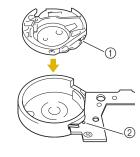
**7** Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and bobbin thread sensor and the surrounding area.

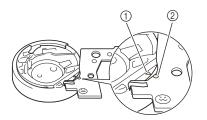


- ① Cleaning brush
- ② Race
- ③ Bobbin thread sensor

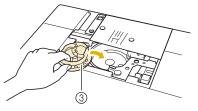
#### 🗸 Note

- Do not apply oil to the bobbin case.
- If lint or dust collects on the bobbin thread sensor, the sensor may not operate correctly.
- Insert the bobbin case so that the  $\blacktriangle$  mark on the bobbin case aligns with the  $\bullet$  mark on the machine.





\* Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\bigcirc$  marks.



- (1)  $\blacktriangle$  mark on the bobbin case
- ② mark on the machine
- ③ Bobbin case

\* Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.

# **A** CAUTION

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XE5342-101 (green marking on the screw), XE8298-001 (gray, for bobbin work)), contact your nearest authorized retailer.
- Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.
- Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.



#### Vie Note

 If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

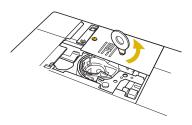
## Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area

The cutter below the needle plate should be cleaned. If dust or lint accumulate on the cutter, it will be difficult to cut the thread when the "Thread Cutter" button is pressed or the automatic thread cutting function is used. Clean the cutter when the thread is not easily cut.

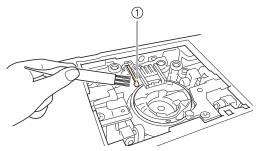
0

Follow steps 1 through 5 in "Cleaning the Race" to remove the needle plate cover.

Use the screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the needle plate.



Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the cutter in the bobbin case area.



① Cutter

# **A** CAUTION

• Do not touch the cutter, otherwise injuries may result.

Use the screwdriver included with the machine to screw and attach the needle plate.



**5** Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.

# About the Maintenance Message



Once this message appears, it is recommended to take your machine to your nearest authorized retailer for a regular maintenance check. Although this message will disappear and the machine will

continue to function once you press , the message will display several more times until the appropriate maintenance is performed. Please take the time to arrange the maintenance your machine requires once this message appears. Such steps will help to ensure you receive continued, uninterrupted hours of machine operation for the future.

# **ADJUSTING THE SCREEN**

## Adjusting the Brightness of the **Screen Display**

Under certain lighting conditions, the brightness of the LCD screen may need to be adjusted.

Press  $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears. Display page 6 of the settings screen. Press – or + to adjust the brightness of the screen display. 🚈 📔 Light Screen Disp Brightness



The screen appears dim as the number on the settings screen decreases. The screen appears brighter as the number increases.

## **Touch Panel is Malfunctioning**

If the screen does not respond correctly when you touch a key (the machine does not perform the operation or performs a different operation), follow the steps below to make the proper adjustments.



Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.



 $\rightarrow$  The touch panel adjustment screen is displayed.



Using the included touch pen, lightly touch the center of each +, in order from 1 to 5.

#### Note

 Use the included touch pen to touch the screen. Do not use a mechanical pencil, pin, or other sharp object. Do not press too hard on the screen. Otherwise, damage may result.





Turn the main power to OFF, then turn it back to ON.

#### Note

• If you finish the screen adjustment and the screen still does not respond, or if you cannot do the adjustment, contact your authorized retailer.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

If the machine stops operating correctly, check the following possible problems before requesting service. You can solve most problems by yourself. Visit us at <u>www.babylock.com</u>. If the problem persists, contact your nearest authorized retailer.

## **Frequent troubleshooting topics**

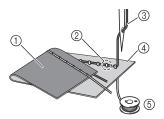
Detailed causes and remedies for common troubleshooting topics are described below. Be sure to refer to this before contacting your retailer.

| Upper thread is too tight                             | page A-7  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric                | page A-8  |
| Incorrect thread tension                              | page A-10 |
| Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed | page A-11 |

# Upper thread is too tight

### Symptom

- \* The upper thread appears as a single continuous line.
- \* The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric. (Refer to the illustration below.)
- \* The upper thread has tightened up, and comes out when pulled.
- \* The upper thread has tightened up, and wrinkles appear in the fabric.
- \* The upper thread tension is tight, and the results do not change even after the thread tension is adjusted.



- ① Lower side of fabric
- ② Lower thread visible from upper side of fabric
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Upper side of fabric
- 5 Bobbin thread

#### Cause

#### Incorrect lower threading

If the lower thread is incorrectly threaded, instead of the appropriate tension being applied to the lower thread, it is pulled through the fabric when the upper thread is pulled up. For this reason, the thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.

### Remedy/check details

Correctly install the lower thread.

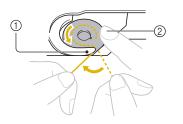
- Turn off the sewing machine.
  - Remove the bobbin from the bobbin case.
- Place the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds in the correct direction.
  - \* Hold the bobbin with your right hand with the thread unwinding to the left, and hold the end of the thread with your left hand. Then, with your right hand, place the bobbin in the bobbin case.



If the bobbin is inserted with the thread unwinding in the wrong direction, sewing will be done with an incorrect thread tension.

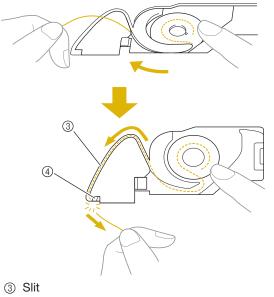
#### While holding the bobbin in place with your finger, pass the thread through the slit in the needle plate.

Hold down the bobbin with your right hand, and then pull the end of the thread around the tab with your left hand.



- ① Tab
- ② Hold down the bobbin with your right hand.

Pull the thread to pass it through the slit in the needle plate, then cut it with the cutter.



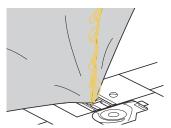
④ Cutter

Sewing with the correct thread tension is possible after the bobbin has been correctly installed in the bobbin case.

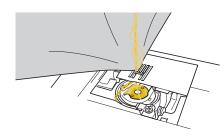
## Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric

#### Symptom

The thread becomes tangled on the lower side of the fabric.



- After starting sewing, a rattling noise is made and sewing cannot continue.
- Looking under the fabric, there is tangled thread in the bobbin case.



#### **Cause**

#### Incorrect upper threading

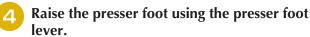
If the upper thread is incorrectly threaded, the upper thread passed through the fabric cannot be firmly pulled up and the upper thread becomes tangled in the bobbin case, causing a rattling noise.

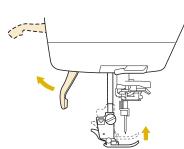
### Remedy/check details

Remove the tangled thread, and then correct the upper threading.

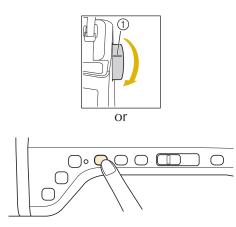
#### Remove the tangled thread. If it cannot be removed, cut the thread with scissors.

- \* Refer to "Cleaning the Race" in "CARE AND MAINTENANCE" on page A-3.
- Remove the upper thread from the machine.
- Refer to the following steps to correct the upper threading.
  - If the bobbin was removed from the bobbin case, refer to "LOWER THREADING" on page B-30 and "Remedy/check details" in the section "Upper thread is too tight" on page A-7 to correctly install the bobbin.



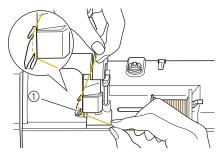


- \* If the presser foot is not raised, the sewing machine cannot be threaded correctly.
- 5 Raise the needle by turning the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) so that the mark on the wheel points up, or press "Needle Position" button once or twice to raise the needle.



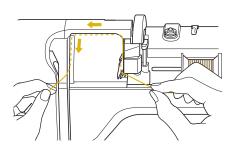
① Mark

While holding the thread with both hands, place the thread behind the thread guide plate.

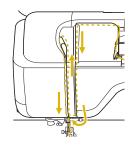


① Thread guide plate

While holding the thread in your right hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.

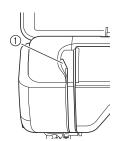


B Guide the thread down, up, then down through the groove, as shown in the illustration.



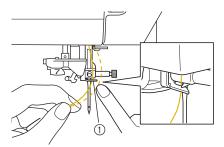
### Memo

• Look in the upper groove area to check if the thread catches on the take-up lever visible inside the upper groove area.



① Look in the upper groove area

Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked "6") by holding the thread with both hands and guiding it as shown in the illustration.



① Needle bar thread guide

Thread the needle according to steps 10 and 16 in "Upper Threading" on page B-38.

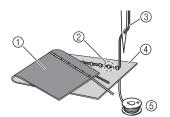
## Incorrect thread tension

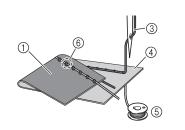
### Symptoms

- Symptom 1: The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 2: The upper thread appears as a straight line on the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 3: The upper thread is visible from the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 4: The lower thread appears as a straight line on the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 5: The stitching on the lower side of the fabric is loose or has slack.

### □ Symptom 1/2

### □ Symptom 3/4





- ① Lower side of fabric
- ② Lower thread visible on upper side of fabric
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Upper side of fabric
- 5 Lower thread
- 6 Upper thread visible from
- lower side of fabric

### ■ Cause/remedy/check details

### Cause 1

#### The machine is not correctly threaded.

<With symptoms 1 and 2 described above>

The lower threading is incorrect.

Adjust the upper thread tension and then refer to "Upper Thread is Too Tight" on page S-12.

<With symptoms 3 through 5 described above>

The upper threading is incorrect.

Adjust the upper thread tension and then refer to "Tangled thread on wrong side of fabric" on page A-8 to correct the upper threading.

### Cause 2

### A needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used.

The sewing machine needle that should be used depends on the type of fabric sewn and the thread thickness. If a needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used, the thread tension will not be adjusted correctly, causing wrinkles in the fabric or skipped stitches.

\* Refer to "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" on page B-49 to check that a needle and thread are appropriate for the fabric being used.

### □ Cause 3

#### An appropriate upper tension is not selected.

Adjust the upper thread tension to select an appropriate thread tension.

- The appropriate thread tension differs according to the type of fabric and thread being used.
  - \* Adjust the thread tension while test sewing on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as that used in your project.

#### 🗸 Note

• If the upper threading and lower threading are incorrect, the thread tension cannot be adjusted correctly, even by adjusting the upper thread tension. Check the upper threading and lower threading first, and then adjust the thread tension.

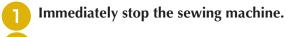
- \* When the lower thread is visible on the upper side of the fabric. Set the upper thread tension to a lower number. (Loosen the thread tension.)
- \* When the upper thread is visible on the lower side of the fabric. Set the upper thread tension to a higher number. (Tighten the thread tension.)



### Fabric is caught in the machine and cannot be removed

If the fabric is caught in the sewing machine and cannot be removed, the thread may have become tangled under the needle plate. Follow the procedure described below to remove the fabric from the machine. If the operation could not be completed according to the procedure, instead of attempting to complete it forcefully, contact your nearest authorized retailer.

### Removing the fabric from the machine





Turn off the sewing machine.

### Remove the needle.

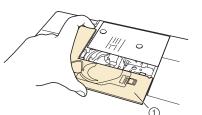
If the needle is lowered into the fabric, turn the handwheel away from you (clockwise) to raise the needle out of the fabric, and then remove the needle. Refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page B-47.

- Remove the presser foot and presser foot holder.
- Refer to "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page B-45.
- Lift up the fabric and cut the threads below it.

If the fabric can be removed, remove it. Continue with the following steps to clean the race.



### Remove the needle plate cover.



Needle plate cover



Cut out the tangled threads, and then remove the bobbin.

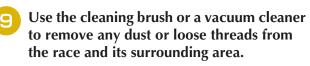


### Remove the bobbin case.

If threads remain in the bobbin case, remove them.



(1) Bobbin case





- Cleaning brush
- ② Race

| If the fabric could be removed     | Continue with step 16. |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| If the fabric could not be removed | Continue with step 10. |

Use the enclosed disc-shaped screwdriver 10 to loosen the two screws on the needle plate.



### Note

Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

# Slightly lift up the needle plate, cut any tangled threads, and then remove the needle plate.

Remove the fabric and threads from the needle plate.

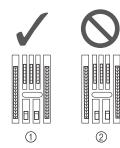


If the fabric cannot be removed, even after completing these steps, contact your nearest authorized retailer.

- Remove any threads in the race and around the feed dogs.
  - **3** Turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.
- Align the two screw holes in the needle plate with the two holes at the needle plate mounting base, and then fit the needle plate onto the machine.
- **15** Lightly finger-tighten the screw on the right side of the needle plate. Then, use the disc-shaped screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw on the left side. Finally, firmly tighten the screw on the right side.



Turn the handwheel to check that the feed dogs move smoothly and do not contact the edges of the slots in the needle plate.



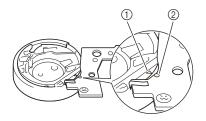
- Orrect position of feed dogs
- ② Incorrect position of feed dogs

### 🗸 Note

• Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.





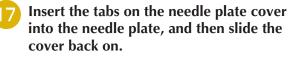
\* Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\bullet$  marks.

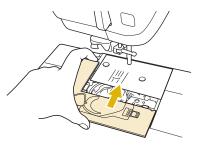


- (1)  $\blacktriangle$  mark on the bobbin case
- ② mark on the machine
- ③ Bobbin case
- \* Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.

# **A** CAUTION

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XE5342-101 (green marking on the screw), XE8298-001 (gray, for bobbin work)), contact your nearest authorized retailer.
- Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.





### 🟒 Note

 If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

18

# Check the condition of the needle, and then install it.

If the needle is in a poor condition, for example, if it is bent, be sure to install a new needle.

\* Refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page B-47.

# **A** CAUTION

• Never use bent needles. Bent needles can easily break, possibly resulting in injuries.

### ப் Note

• After completing this procedure, continue with the following procedure in "Checking machine operations" to check that the machine is operating correctly.

### 河 Memo

• Since the needle may have been damaged when the fabric was caught in the machine, we recommend replacing it with a new one.

### Checking machine operations

If the needle plate has been removed, check machine operations to confirm that installation has been completed correctly.



Turn on the machine.

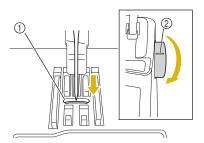


### بر Note

• Do not install the presser foot and thread at this time.

### Slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), and look from all sides to check that the needle falls at the center of the hole in the needle plate.

If the needle contacts the needle plate, remove the needle plate, and then install it again, starting with step 13 in "Removing the fabric from the machine" on page A-12.



- ① Hole in the needle plate
- ② Handwheel

Select zigzag stitch  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right|$  . At this time,

increase the stitch length and width to their maximum settings.

# 5 Slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle bar and feed dogs operate correctly.

If the needle or feed dogs contact the needle plate, the machine may be malfunctioning; therefore, contact your nearest authorized retailer.

# Turn off the machine, and then install the bobbin and presser foot.

\* Refer to "Setting the Bobbin" and "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page B-45.

### Correctly thread the machine.

\* For details on the machine, refer to "Upper Threading" on page B-38.

#### 🗸 Note

• The thread may have become tangled as a result of incorrect upper threading. Make sure that the machine is correctly threaded.

### <mark>8</mark> P

Perform trial sewing with normal fabric.

#### 🗸 Note

• Incorrect sewing may be the result of incorrect upper threading or sewing thin fabrics. If there are poor results from the trial sewing, check the upper threading or the type of fabric being used.

# List of Symptoms

| Problem                                                         | Cause                                                                                                                                    | Solution                                                                                                                          | Page       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| The thread is tangled on the wrong side of                      | Upper threading is incorrect.                                                                                                            | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.                                                               | B-38       |
| he fabric.                                                      | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                 | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combinations" chart.                                                                           | B-49       |
| The upper thread is oo tight.                                   | The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.                                                                                              | Correctly install the bobbin thread.                                                                                              | B-35       |
| Cannot thread the needle                                        | Needle is not in the correct position.                                                                                                   | Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.                                                                           | B-10       |
|                                                                 | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                                                                   | B-47       |
|                                                                 | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                                                                               | B-47       |
| Cannot lower the<br>presser foot with the<br>presser foot lever | Presser foot was raised using the "Presser Foot<br>Lifter" button.                                                                       | Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.                                                                 | B-10       |
| Thread tension is ncorrect                                      | Upper threading is incorrect.                                                                                                            | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.                                                               | B-38       |
|                                                                 | Bobbin is set incorrectly.                                                                                                               | Reset the bobbin. (If needle plate was<br>removed, reinstall needle plate and tighten<br>screws prior to installing bobbin case.) | B-35       |
|                                                                 | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                 | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                                                                            | B-49       |
|                                                                 | Presser foot holder is not attached correctly.                                                                                           | Reattach the presser foot holder correctly.                                                                                       | B-45       |
|                                                                 | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                                                                                       | Adjust the thread tension.                                                                                                        | S-12       |
|                                                                 | Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.                                                                                                      | Use a correctly wound bobbin.                                                                                                     | B-30       |
|                                                                 | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                                                                               | B-47       |
| Jpper thread breaks                                             | Machine is not threaded correctly (used the wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread did not catch the needle bar threader, etc.) | Rethread the machine correctly.                                                                                                   | B-38       |
|                                                                 | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                                                                               | B-47       |
|                                                                 | There are scratches on the bobbin case.                                                                                                  | Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized retailer.                                                                     | A-3        |
|                                                                 | Upper thread tension is too strong.                                                                                                      | Adjust the thread tension.                                                                                                        | S-12       |
|                                                                 | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                 | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combinations" chart.                                                                           | B-49       |
|                                                                 | Thread is twisted.                                                                                                                       | Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.                                                   | _          |
|                                                                 | There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate.                                                                                   | Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized retailer.                                                                    | S-26       |
|                                                                 | There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot.                                                                                   | Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized retailer.                                                                    | B-45       |
|                                                                 | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                                                                   | B-47       |
|                                                                 | Thread is knotted or tangled.                                                                                                            | Rethread upper and lower thread.                                                                                                  | B-35, B-38 |
|                                                                 | A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.                                                                             | Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.                               | B-35       |
| Bobbin thread breaks                                            | Bobbin is set incorrectly.                                                                                                               | Reset the bobbin thread correctly.                                                                                                | B-35       |
|                                                                 | There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly.                                                                         | Replace the bobbin.                                                                                                               | B-35       |
|                                                                 | Thread is twisted.                                                                                                                       | Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.                                                    | _          |
|                                                                 | A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.                                                                             | Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.                               | B-35       |
| Bobbin thread does not wind neatly on the                       | The thread is not passed through the bobbin winding thread guide correctly.                                                              | Correctly pass the thread through the bobbin winding thread guide.                                                                | B-31       |
| bobbin.                                                         | Bobbin spins slowly.                                                                                                                     | Press [+] in the bobbin winding window to increase the bobbin winding speed.                                                      | B-33       |
|                                                                 | The thread that was pulled out was not wound onto the bobbin correctly.                                                                  | Wind the thread that was pulled off around the bobbin 5 or 6 times clockwise.                                                     | B-32       |

| Problem                                  | Cause                                                             | Solution                                                                   | Page       |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| kipped stitches                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                      | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.          | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                     | B-49       |
|                                          | Machine is threaded incorrectly.                                  | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.       | B-38       |
|                                          | Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate.                | Remove the dust or lint with the brush.                                    | A-3        |
|                                          | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                  | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                            | B-47       |
|                                          | Needle is defective.                                              | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Thin or stretch fabrics are being sewn.                           | Sew with one sheet of thin paper under the fabric.                         | S-9        |
| leedle breaks                            | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                  | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                            | B-47       |
|                                          | Needle clamp screw is not tightened.                              | Tighten the needle clamp screw.                                            | B-48       |
|                                          | Needle is turned or bent.                                         | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.          | Check the needle and fabric combination.                                   | B-49       |
|                                          | Wrong presser foot was used.                                      | Use the recommended presser foot.                                          | S-68       |
|                                          | Upper thread tension is too strong.                               | Adjust the thread tension setting.                                         | S-12       |
|                                          | Fabric is pulled during sewing.                                   | Do not pull the fabric during sewing.                                      | _          |
|                                          | Spool cap is set incorrectly.                                     | Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. | B-38       |
|                                          | There are scratches around the holes in the needle plate.         | Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized retailer.             | A-3        |
|                                          | There are scratches around the hole(s) in the presser foot.       | Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized retailer.             | B-45       |
|                                          | There are scratches on the bobbin case.                           | Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized retailer.              | A-3        |
|                                          | Needle is defective.                                              | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Upper threading is incorrect.                                     | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.        | B-38       |
|                                          | Bobbin is set incorrectly.                                        | Reset the bobbin thread correctly.                                         | B-35       |
|                                          | Presser foot is attached incorrectly.                             | Attach the presser foot correctly.                                         | B-45       |
|                                          | Screw of the presser foot holder is loose.                        | Securely tighten the screw of the presser foot.                            | B-45       |
|                                          | Fabric is too thick.                                              | Use fabric that the needle can pierce when the handwheel is turned.        | S-7        |
|                                          | Fabric is fed forcefully when sewing thick fabric or thick seams. | Allow the fabric to be fed without being forcefully pushed.                |            |
|                                          | Stitch length is too short.                                       | Adjust the stitch length.                                                  | S-11       |
|                                          | Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.                               | Use a correctly wound bobbin.                                              | B-30       |
| Fabric does not feed through the machine | Feed dogs are set in the down position.                           | Press of , and then turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.             | S-40       |
|                                          | Stitches are too close together.                                  | Lengthen the stitch length setting.                                        | S-11       |
|                                          | Wrong presser foot was used.                                      | Use the correct presser foot.                                              | S-68       |
|                                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                      | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Thread is entangled.                                              | Cut the entangled thread and remove it from the race.                      | A-11       |
| abric puckers                            | There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading.              | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.       | B-35, B-38 |
|                                          | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                | Adjust the thread tension.                                                 | S-12       |
|                                          | Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics.                   | Shorten the stitch length.                                                 | S-11       |
|                                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                      | Replace the needle.                                                        | B-47       |
|                                          | Spool cap is set incorrectly.                                     | Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. | B-38       |
|                                          | Wrong presser foot.                                               | Use the correct presser foot.                                              | S-68       |

A

| Problem                                                   | Cause                                                                                                                            | Solution                                                                                                                                                | Page       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| High-pitched sound                                        | Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs.                                                                                         | Remove the dust or lint.                                                                                                                                | A-3        |
| while sewing                                              | Pieces of thread are caught in the race.                                                                                         | Clean the race.                                                                                                                                         | A-3        |
|                                                           | Upper threading is incorrect.                                                                                                    | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.                                                                                     | B-38       |
|                                                           | There are scratches on the bobbin case.                                                                                          | Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized retailer.                                                                                           | A-3        |
|                                                           | A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.                                                                     | Use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.                                                                                                    | B-35       |
| Character pattern                                         | Wrong presser foot was used.                                                                                                     | Attach the correct presser foot.                                                                                                                        | S-68       |
| does not turn out                                         | Pattern adjustment settings were set incorrectly.                                                                                | Revise the pattern adjustment settings.                                                                                                                 | S-82       |
|                                                           | Did not use a stabilizer material on thin fabrics or stretch fabrics.                                                            | Attach a stabilizer material.                                                                                                                           | S-81       |
|                                                           | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                                                                               | Adjust the thread tension.                                                                                                                              | S-12       |
|                                                           | Fabric was pulled, pushed or fed at an angle while it was being sewn.                                                            | Sew while guiding the fabric with your hands so that the fabric is fed in a straight line.                                                              | S-3        |
| Machine does not                                          | There is no pattern selected.                                                                                                    | Select a pattern.                                                                                                                                       | S-21, S-77 |
| operate                                                   | "Start/Stop" button was not pushed.                                                                                              | Press the "Start/Stop" button.                                                                                                                          | B-10       |
|                                                           | Main power switch is not turned on.                                                                                              | Turn the main power to ON.                                                                                                                              | B-15       |
|                                                           | Presser foot is not lowered.                                                                                                     | Lower the presser foot.                                                                                                                                 | B-10       |
|                                                           | "Start/Stop" button was pushed with the foot controller attached.                                                                | Remove the foot controller, or use the foot controller to operate the machine.                                                                          | S-4        |
|                                                           | The "Start/Stop" button was pressed while the machine is set for the sewing speed controller to control the zigzag stitch width. | Use the foot controller instead of the<br>"Start/Stop" button to operate the machine,<br>or set the "Width Control" to "OFF" in the<br>settings screen. | B-21, S-4  |
|                                                           | All keys and buttons have been locked by                                                                                         | Press to unlock all keys and buttons.                                                                                                                   | B-45, B-47 |
| Nothing happens,<br>even if the LCD<br>display is pressed | The screen has been locked.                                                                                                      | Press either of the following keys to unlock the screen.                                                                                                | _          |
| The fabric feeds in the opposite direction.               | The feed mechanism is damaged.                                                                                                   | Contact your nearest authorized retailer.                                                                                                               | _          |
| The LCD screen is<br>ogged up.                            | Condensation has formed on the LCD screen.                                                                                       | After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.                                                                                                           | _          |

# **A** CAUTION

- This machine is equipped with a thread detection device. If the "Start/Stop" button is pushed before the upper threading is done, the machine will not operate properly. Also, depending on the pattern selected, the machine may feed the fabric even if the needle is raised. This is due to the needle bar release mechanism. At these times, the machine will make a sound different from what is made during normal sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction.
- If the power is disconnected during sewing: Turn the main power to OFF and unplug the machine. If you restart the machine, follow the instructions for operating the machine correctly.

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

If the machine is not properly set and the "Start/Stop" button or the "Reverse Stitch" button is pressed, or if the operation procedure is incorrect, the machine does not start. An alarm sounds and an error message is displayed on the LCD. If an error message displays, follow the instructions in the message.

Below is an explanation of error messages. Refer to these when necessary (if you press or do the operation correctly while the error message is displayed, the message disappears).

# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to rethread the machine. If you press the "Start/Stop" button without rethreading the machine, the thread tension may be wrong or the needle may break and cause injury.

| Marks        | Error Messages                                                             | Cause/Solution                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | A malfunction occurred.Turn the machine off, then on again.                | This message is displayed if some malfunction occurs.                                                                                                                                            |
|              | Can not change the configuration of the characters                         | This message is displayed when there are too many characters<br>and the curved character configuration is impossible.                                                                            |
|              | Check and rethread the upper thread.                                       | This message is displayed when the upper thread is broken or<br>not threaded correctly, and the "Start/Stop" button or the<br>"Reverse Stitch" button is pressed.                                |
|              | Data volume is too large for this pattern.                                 | This message is displayed when the patterns you are editing take up too much memory, or if you are editing too many patterns for the memory.                                                     |
|              | Failed to save file.                                                       | This message appears when you try to save more than 100 settings screen image files in the USB media. In this case, delete a file from the USB media or use different USB media. (see page B-25) |
|              | In twin needle mode, the automatic needle threading button cannot be used. | This message is displayed when the automatic needle threading button is pushed while twin needle sewing is set.                                                                                  |
|              | Lower the buttonhole lever.                                                | This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is up, a buttonhole stitch is selected, and the "Start/Stop" button or "Reverse Stitch" button is pushed.                                    |
|              | Lower the presser foot lever.                                              | This message is displayed when the "Presser Foot Lifter"<br>button is pushed while the presser foot lever is raised/the<br>needle is lowered.                                                    |
| ?            | Not enough available memory to save the pattern. Delete another pattern?   | This message is displayed when the memory is full and the stitch or pattern cannot be saved.                                                                                                     |
| $\odot$      | OK to automatically lower the presser foot?                                | This message is displayed when the presser foot is raised).                                                                                                                                      |
| ?            | OK to delete the selected pattern?                                         | This message is displayed when, after selecting a pattern,<br>Utility or Character<br>Beconative Stitch or Stitch is pressed and the pattern is about to be<br>deleted.                          |
| ?            | OK to delete the setting?                                                  | This message appears when DELETE or ALL<br>DELETE or ALL<br>DELETE is pressed to<br>delete the settings for a utility stitch. To delete the selected<br>settings, press or .                     |
| ( <b>2</b> ) | Preventive maintenance is recommended.                                     | This message is displayed when the machine needs to be maintained. (see page A-3)                                                                                                                |
|              | Raise the buttonhole lever.                                                | This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is down,<br>a stitch other than a buttonhole is selected, and the "Start/<br>Stop" button or the "Reverse Stitch" button is pushed.          |
| $\odot$      | Set the clock.                                                             | This message appears when the time/date is not set. Set time/date. (see page B-16)                                                                                                               |

| Marks              | Error Messages                                                                                          | Cause/Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ?                  | The bobbin thread is almost empty.                                                                      | This message is displayed when the bobbin thread is running out.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                    | The bobbin winder safety device has activated. Is the thread tangled?                                   | This message is displayed when the bobbin is being wound,<br>and the motor locks because the thread is tangled, etc.                                                                                                                             |
| ?                  | The pockets are full. Delete a pattern.                                                                 | This message is displayed when the memory is full and a pattern must be deleted.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{N}}$ | The safety device has been activated.Is the thread tangled? Is the needle bent?                         | This message is displayed when the motor locks due to tangled thread or for other reasons related to thread delivery.                                                                                                                            |
|                    | The shutoff support mode has been activated. Turn off the machine.                                      | This message appears when the machine is in the shutoff<br>support mode. Turn off the machine once to start the machine<br>again. (see page B-24)                                                                                                |
|                    | The "Start/Stop" button does not operate with the foot controller attached. Remove the foot controller. | This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed to sew Utility stitches or Character/Decorative stitches while the foot controller is connected.                                                                                |
|                    | The upper thread may not be threaded correctly. Thread the upper thread from the beginning.             | This message is displayed when it seems that the upper thread has not been threaded correctly.                                                                                                                                                   |
|                    | The USB media was changed. Do not change the USB media while it is being read.                          | This message is displayed when you attempt to select a pattern after the USB media in which the pattern is saved has been changed.                                                                                                               |
| $\odot$            | There is no needle plate cover. Attach a needle plate cover.                                            | This message is displayed when the needle plate cover is not attached.                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                    | This file cannot be used.                                                                               | This message appears if the file format is incompatible with this machine. Check the list of compatible file formats. (see page S-95)                                                                                                            |
|                    | This file exceeds the data capacity and cannot be used. Use a suitable size file.                       | This message is displayed when the file size exceeds the data capacity of the machine.<br>Confirm the file size and format. (see page S-96)                                                                                                      |
|                    | This key cannot be used at this time.                                                                   | This message is displayed when you press Sewing Guide in the screen other than the Utility Stitch, or press Pattern Explanation in the screen other than the Utility Stitch or Character/Decorative Stitch.                                      |
|                    | This key does not operate when the needle is down. Raise the needle and press the key again.            | This message is displayed when a key on the LCD display is touched while the needle is in the down position.                                                                                                                                     |
|                    | This stitch is not "Dual Feed Mode" compatible.                                                         | This message appears when the dual feed foot cannot be used with the current stitch. Select other stitch. (see page B-51)                                                                                                                        |
|                    | This USB media cannot be used.                                                                          | This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible media.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| ?                  | This USB media is incompatible.                                                                         | This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible<br>USB media. For a list of compatible USB media, visit<br>www.babylock.com .                                                                                                         |
|                    | To thread the needle, please remove the fabric from under the presser foot.                             | This message is displayed if you press the "Automatic<br>Threading" button while the dual feed foot is attached and the<br>fabric thickness is 3 mm (1/8 inch) or higher. Remove the<br>fabric and press the "Automatic Threading" button again. |
|                    | Transmitting by USB                                                                                     | This message is displayed while the USB media is transmitting.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                    | Turn off the power and replace the needle plate.                                                        | This message is displayed when you try to sew with a stitch<br>other than a middle needle position stitch while the single-hole<br>needle plate is installed.                                                                                    |
|                    | USB media error                                                                                         | This message is displayed when an error occurs with the USB media.                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                    | USB media is not loaded. Load USB media.                                                                | This message is displayed when you try to recall or save a pattern while no USB media is loaded.                                                                                                                                                 |
|                    | Use the presser foot lifter button to lower the presser foot.                                           | This message is displayed when a button, such as the "Start/Stop" button, is pushed while the presser foot is raised.                                                                                                                            |

| Marks | Error Messages                                                                                                 | Cause/Solution                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | When the speed controller is set to control the zigzag stitch width, the "Start/Stop" button does not operate. | This message is displayed when the speed control lever is set<br>to control the zigzag stitch width, and the "Start/Stop" button<br>is pushed. Use the foot controller to operate the machine. |

# **SPECIFICATIONS**

|                                | Item                         | Specification                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sewing Machine and Accessories | Dimensions of machine        | Approx. 57.1 cm (W) × 33.5 cm (H) × 28.4 cm (D) (approx. 22-1/2 inches (W) × 13-1/16 inches (H) × 11-3/16 inches (D))         |
|                                | Dimensions of box            | Approx. 68.5 cm (W) × 55.0 cm (H) × 37.7 cm (D) (approx.<br>26-15/16 inches (W) × 21-5/8 inches (H) × 14-13/16 inches<br>(D)) |
|                                | Weight of machine            | Approx. 15.3 kg (approx. 33.7 lb)                                                                                             |
|                                | Weight of box (for shipping) | Approx. 20.3 kg (approx. 44.7 lb)                                                                                             |
|                                | Sewing speed                 | 70 to 1050 stitches per minute                                                                                                |
|                                | Needles                      | Home sewing machine needles (HA × 130)                                                                                        |

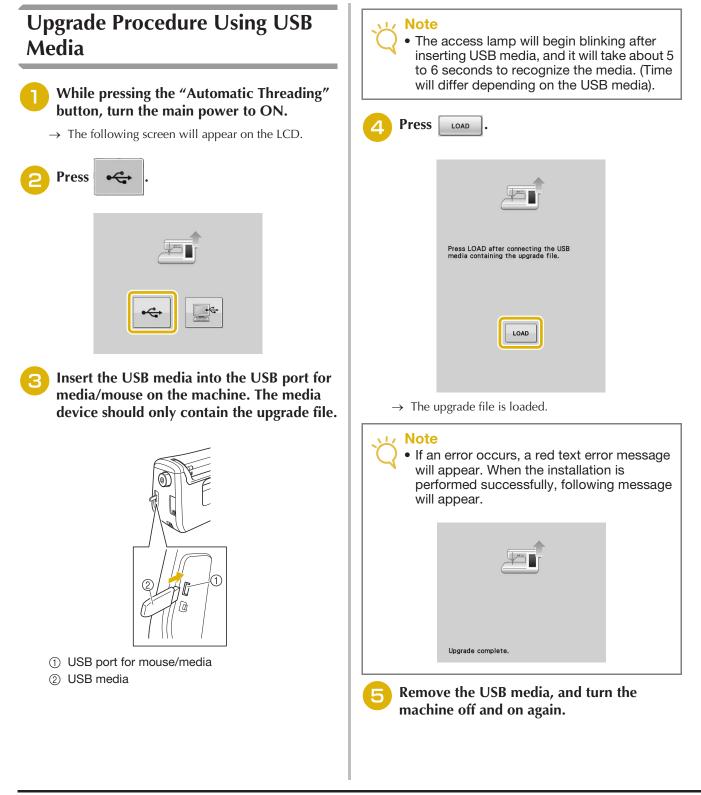
\* Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

# **UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE**

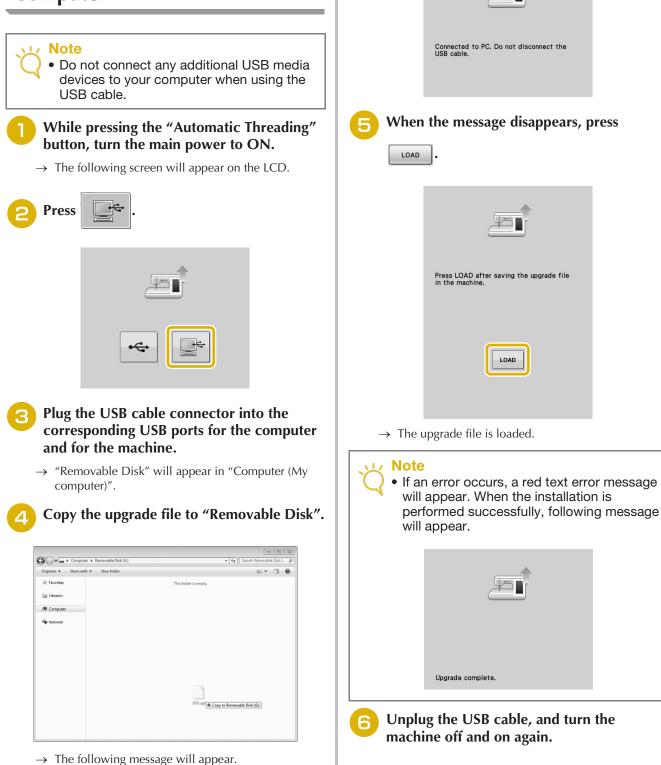
You can use USB media or a computer to upgrade software for your sewing machine. When an upgrade program is available on <u>www.babylock.com</u>, please download the files following the instructions on the website and steps below.

### Note

• When using USB media to upgrade the software, check that no data other than the upgrade file is saved on the USB media being used before starting to upgrade.



### Upgrade Procedure Using Computer



# INDEX

### A

| Accessories                        |            |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| included accessories               | B-10       |
| options                            | B-12       |
| Accessory compartment              |            |
| Adapter                            | B-46       |
| Air vent                           |            |
| Alphabet characters                |            |
| character/decorative stitches      | S-78       |
| Appliqué                           | S-48       |
| quilting                           | S-38       |
| using a zigzag stitch              |            |
| Automatic fabric sensor system     | S-17       |
| Automatic reinforcement stitch key |            |
| Automatic thread cutting key       | S-14       |
| Automatic Threading button         | B-10, B-38 |
|                                    |            |

#### B

| Back to beginning key                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bar tacks S-60                                                  |
| Basting S-28                                                    |
| Blind hem stitches                                              |
| Bobbin                                                          |
| pulling up the bobbin thread B-37                               |
| setting B-35                                                    |
| winding B-30                                                    |
| Bobbin case                                                     |
| cleaning A-3                                                    |
| Bobbin cover                                                    |
| Bobbin holder (switch) B-32                                     |
| Bobbin winder B-8                                               |
| Bobbin work S-104                                               |
| Button sewing S-61                                              |
| 4 hole buttons S-62                                             |
| shank S-62                                                      |
| Buttonhole lever                                                |
| Buttonholes                                                     |
| odd-shaped/buttons that do not fit the button holder plate S-58 |
| one-step                                                        |
| one step                                                        |

### C

| Character/Decorative Stitches |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
|                               | 6.00               |
| adjustments                   |                    |
| combining                     | S-90               |
| editing                       |                    |
| key functions                 |                    |
| retrieving                    | S-99, S-100        |
| saving                        | . S-96, S-97, S-98 |
| selecting                     | S-77               |
| sewing                        |                    |
| Cleaning                      |                    |
| LCD screen                    | A-3                |
| machine casing                | A-3                |
| race                          | A-3                |
| Combining Patterns            |                    |
| character/decorative stitches | S-90               |
| Cord guide bobbin cover       | S-32               |
| Crazy quilt                   | S-32               |

### D

| Darning        | S-58 |
|----------------|------|
| Dart seam      | S-28 |
| Dual feed foot | B-51 |

### Ε

| Eco mode                      | B-24 |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Editing                       |      |
| character/decorative stitches | S-84 |
| Elastic zigzag stitches       | S-33 |
| Elongation key                | S-87 |
| Error messages                | A-17 |
| Eyelet                        | S-62 |

### F

| Fabrics                                |      |
|----------------------------------------|------|
| fabric/thread/needle combinations I    | B-49 |
| sewing heavyweight fabrics             | S-7  |
| sewing lightweight fabrics             |      |
| sewing stretch fabrics S-9,            |      |
| Fagoting                               | S-52 |
| Feed dogs B-9,                         |      |
| Flat bed attachment                    | B-8  |
| Flat fell Seam                         | S-29 |
| Foot controller B-8,                   | S-4  |
| Free motion quilting                   |      |
| free motion echo quilting foot "E"     | S-43 |
| free motion open toe quilting foot "O" | S-40 |
| free motion quilting foot "C"          |      |
| Free motion sewing mode                |      |

#### G

| Gathering | <br>S-29 |
|-----------|----------|
| Gathering | <br>S-2  |

#### н

| Handle             | B-8  |
|--------------------|------|
| Handwheel          | B-8  |
| Heirloom           |      |
| Hemstitching       | 5-53 |
| Home page screen B | 3-18 |

### Т

Image key ..... S-22, S-89

### K

| Key functions                 |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| character/decorative stitches | S-84 |
| utility stitches              | B-19 |
| Knee lifter B-8,              |      |

### L \_\_\_\_\_

| L/R SHIFT                       | -11 |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| LCD screen B-8, B-              | -18 |
| cleaning                        | A-3 |
| locking S-                      | -18 |
| Lower threading                 |     |
| pulling up the bobbin thread B- | -37 |
| setting the bobbinB-            |     |
| winding the bobbin B-           |     |

#### Μ

| Main power switch B-8,   | B-15 |
|--------------------------|------|
| Mirror image key S-21,   | S-87 |
| Multi-directional sewing | S-63 |

### Ν

| Needle                            |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| changing the needle               | B-47       |
| changing the needle position      | S-25       |
| fabric/thread/needle combinations | B-49       |
| mode                              | B-18       |
| twin needle                       | B-42       |
| Needle bar thread guides          | B-9, B-42  |
| Needle clamp screw                | B-9        |
| Needle mode selection key         |            |
| Needle plate                      | B-9        |
| Needle position                   | S-18, S-25 |
| Needle Position button            |            |

### 0

| Operation buttons | B-10 |
|-------------------|------|
| Overcasting S-31, | S-33 |

### Р

| Patchwork S-32                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|
| Piecing S-36                                     |
| 1/4" quilting foot with guide S-37               |
| Pintuck S-30                                     |
| Pivoting S-15                                    |
| Power cord B-16                                  |
| Power cord receptacle B-8                        |
| Presser foot                                     |
| adapterB-45                                      |
| attaching B-45                                   |
| pressure S-17                                    |
| removingB-45                                     |
| types                                            |
| Presser foot holder                              |
| Presser foot holder screw B-9                    |
| Presser foot lever                               |
| Presser Foot Lifter button                       |
| Presser foot/                                    |
| Needle exchange key B-37, B-42, B-45, B-47, B-51 |
| Pre-tension disk                                 |

### Q

| Quilting            | S-35 |
|---------------------|------|
| free motion         | S-40 |
| with satin stitches | S-39 |

### R

| Race A-3                                  |
|-------------------------------------------|
| Reinforcement Stitch button B-10, S-5     |
| Retrieving                                |
| character/decorative stitch patterns S-99 |
| computer S-101                            |
| machine's memory S-99                     |
| stitch settings S-23                      |
| USB media S-100                           |
| utility stitches S-23                     |
| Reverse Stitch button B-10, S-5           |
| Reverse/Reinforcement stitches S-5        |

### S

| Satin stitches S-39,          | S-88 |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Saving                        |      |
| character/decorative stitches | S-96 |
| computer                      | S-98 |
| machine's memory              |      |
| stitch settings               | S-22 |
| USB media                     |      |
| utility stitches              | S-22 |
| Scallop stitches              | S-50 |

A 1

| Screen brightness A-6                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Settings                                                     |
| automatic reinforcement stitching S-5                        |
| automatic thread cutting                                     |
| display language B-25                                        |
| machine setting mode key B-21                                |
| stitch length S-11                                           |
| stitch width S-10                                            |
| thread tension                                               |
| Sewing machine help key B-26                                 |
| Sewing speed controller (speed control slide) B-8, B-10, S-3 |
| Sewing type selection key B-28                               |
| Shelltuck stitches S-49                                      |
| Shutoff support mode B-24                                    |
| Single/Repeat sewing key S-87                                |
| Size selection key S-86                                      |
| Smocking stitches S-51                                       |
| Speaker B-22                                                 |
| Specifications A-19                                          |
| Spool cap B-8                                                |
| Spool net B-44                                               |
| Spool pin B-8                                                |
| Start/Stop button B-10                                       |
| Step stitch patterns S-93                                    |
| Stitch setting chart S-68                                    |
| Straight stitch foot S-26                                    |
| Straight stitch needle plate S-26                            |
| Straight stitches S-24                                       |
| Supplemental spool pin B-8, B-30, B-42                       |

## T

| Tape attaching                         |
|----------------------------------------|
| Tape or elastic attaching S-52         |
| Thread                                 |
| fabric/thread/needle combinations B-49 |
| thread tension S-12                    |
| Thread cutter B-8, S-4                 |
| Thread cutter button B-10              |
| Thread density key S-88                |
| Thread guide B-8, B-31, B-34, B-43     |
| Thread guide plate B-8, B-34, B-38     |
| Top cover B-8                          |
| Top stitching S-50                     |
| Touch pen A-6                          |
| Troubleshooting A-7                    |
| Twin needle                            |
|                                        |

### U

| Upgrading A-20                              |
|---------------------------------------------|
| Upper threading                             |
| twin needle mode B-42                       |
| using the "Automatic Threading" button B-38 |
| using the spool net B-44                    |
| USB cable                                   |
| USB media                                   |
| recalling S-100                             |
| saving S-97                                 |
| usable S-95                                 |
| USB mouse                                   |
| USB port connector                          |
| for computer B-8, S-98                      |
| for mouse/media S-97                        |
| Utility stitches                            |
| key functions B-19                          |
| pattern explanation key B-29                |
| retrieving S-23                             |
| saving S-22                                 |
| selecting S-21                              |
| sewing type selection key B-28              |
| stitch setting chart S-68                   |
| <u> </u>                                    |

### W

| Walking foot     | B-45 |
|------------------|------|
| Z                |      |
| Zigzag stitches  | S-31 |
| Zipper insertion |      |
| centered         | S-64 |
| side             | S-65 |





